

总主编 林骥华

21世纪

# 大学实用旅游英语

21st Century Practical English for Tourism

College Level Book 2

主编 孔卫平 (第二册)

本册编者 孔卫平 (Wei-ping Kong)

王美娣 (Mei-di Wang)

雪伦·鲍德曼 (Sharon Portman)

爱伦·罗森 (Ellen Rosen)

奥斯塔波维奇 (Vladimir Ostapowicz)



复旦大学出版社  
www.fudanpress.com.cn

## 前 言

《21 世纪大学实用旅游英语》(21st Century Practical English for Tourism: College Level)是一套创新的旅游专业英语系列教程,供高职、高专院校教学使用,亦可供旅游界从业人员进修和提高英语水平及应用能力作参考教材。

本系列教材包括基础教程(第一册、第二册)及其教师用书和口语教程,由复旦大学出版社计美娟副编审、林骧华编审策划并确定编写计划和各册提纲,复旦大学、美国 Fullerton College、上海师范大学等学校的教师参加编写。

基础教程第二册由美国 Fullerton College 孔卫平教授担任主编,参与编写的 3 位美国教授都具备 20 年以上的英语教学、课程开发和组织、参与赴中国旅游组团实践的经验。本书中的锦绣中华部分和语法部分由复旦大学外文学院的王美娣与美籍作家 Vladimir Ostapowicz 编写。系列教材由总主编林骧华修改和审定教材内容和文字。

本册教材内容有以下特点:

- 以在中国旅游的实际经验为基础,编写符合英语口语表达规范的会话;
- 阅读材料充分体现中国的悠久历史和瑰丽风景;
- 每个单元的教学包括精读、泛读、听力、会话、语法、写作、翻译,旨在培养学生综合运用英语的能力。
- 编写练习题的指导思想是训练学生解决问题和独立思考的能力;
- 对生词和短语的解释、语法解析等内容采用双语方式,以促进提高学生提高对英语语言的理解能力。
- 课文、对话和阅读等语篇内容充分体现历史文化知识和当代生活。

本书每个单元的内容设置为 7 大部分,按照旅游活动的逻辑顺序编排:

- 主题背景介绍
- 第一部分:入门练习(预习 / 开场白 / 词汇与课文 / 泛听 / 填空 / 精听)
- 第二部分:对话 1 (词汇与课文 / 综合理解 / 口语练习)
- 第三部分:对话 2 (词汇与课文 / 综合理解与思考 / 词汇练习)
- 第四部分:精读(词汇与课文 / 写作练习 / 班级讨论)
- 第五部分:泛读:锦绣中华(词汇与课文 / 阅读理解问题)
- 第六部分:语法复习(语法解释 / 语法练习)
- 第七部分:单元综合练习(词汇练习 / 听写 / 句子连接 / 翻译:英译汉,汉译英)

课文录音及总词汇表见本书光盘,课文译文与练习参考答案(第一、二册)另见光盘(赠送)。

这样的编排方式具有很强的实用性和可操作性,即将学生带进一系列情景,而这些情景都是学生在开始自己的旅游职业时会碰到的事情,而每一个单元各自相对集中于一个主题,比如入住宾馆,观光,购物,看病,就餐等等。

单元教学内容从入门练习开始,介绍主题,导游做开场白;紧接着做听能训练,阅读和理解练习,口语活动,词汇和写作训练;随后是语法知识复习与练习;最后是各种形式的总复习,其中包括听写和写作训练。

在每一个单元里,语言难度较高的是第五部分泛读:“锦绣中华”,这一部分内容是为了使学生在提高英语水平的同时,扩大必要的知识面,熟悉中国几个重要旅游景点的历史文化与背景,包含成都大熊猫繁育研究基地、千岛湖、西湖、杭州、迷人的三亚、哈尔滨的冰雪节、黄龙洞、布达拉宫等等。

本教材选材广泛,体裁新颖,语言规范,内容丰富,适合旅游英语专业学生、旅游业的从业人员和旅游爱好者学习、使用。作为课堂教学使用时,本册教材设定每个单元的教学时间为8课时(一个学期的教学任务)或16课时(两个学期的教学任务),可视学生的英语基础而定。

本册教材的编写者孔卫平、雪伦·鲍德曼、爱伦·罗森都是美籍教授,而且都多次亲历海外旅游或当过导游和领队,他们将自己积累的丰富旅游经验和留美学生英语教学实践融入了整个编写过程,所选的材料是当今使用的流行英语,编者对有些材料经过适当的修改、改写和增删,使之与同类其他教材相比突显出贴近实践的优点。当然,这样的编写思路作为一种新的尝试,必定会有一些不足之处,我们恳切地希望使用本教材的教师和学生提出宝贵的批评意见和建议。

林骧华 孔卫平  
2010年7月

# Contents

<b>Unit 1</b>	<b>Ice Breakers and Community Building(相互了解和团队建设)</b>	1
Part I	Introduction(介绍): Getting Started(入门练习)	2
Part II	Conversation 1(对话1): Getting to Know You!(与你相识)	7
Part III	Conversation 2(对话2): Birth Order and Personality(出生顺序与个性)	10
Part IV	Intensive Reading(精读): Community Building(团队建设)	14
Part V	Reading Passage(泛读): Splendid China 1: The Chengdu Panda Breeding Research Center(锦绣中华1:成都大熊猫繁育研究基地)	17
Part VI	Grammar Review(语法复习): Noun Clauses(名词性从句)	21
Part VII	Unit Review Exercises(单元综合练习)	32
<b>Unit 2</b>	<b>Traditional Performing Arts(传统表演艺术)</b>	37
Part I	Introduction(介绍): Getting Started(入门练习)	38
Part II	Conversation 1(对话1): Chinese Acrobatics(中国杂技)	42
Part III	Conversation 2(对话2): Introducing Beijing Opera(介绍京剧)	45
Part IV	Intensive Reading(精读): Appreciating Traditional Performing Arts(传统表演艺术欣赏)	49
Part V	Reading Passage(泛读): Splendid China 2: Thousand Island Lake(锦绣中华2:千岛湖)	52
Part VI	Grammar Review(语法复习): Relative Clauses(定语从句)	55
Part VII	Unit Review Exercises(单元综合练习)	65
<b>Unit 3</b>	<b>Traditional Sports and Recreation(传统运动和娱乐)</b>	69
Part I	Introduction(介绍): Getting Started(入门练习)	70
Part II	Conversation 1(对话1): In the Park(在公园里)	74
Part III	Conversation 2(对话2): In Our Spare Time(我们的业余时间)	78
Part IV	Intensive Reading(精读): China's Unique Sports(中国独特的运动)	83



Part V	Reading Passage(泛读): Splendid China 3: West Lake(锦绣中华3:西湖) .....	87
Part VI	Grammar Review(语法复习): Adverbial Clauses (1)(状语从句1) .....	90
Part VII	Unit Review Exercises(单元综合练习) .....	99
<b>Unit 4 Post Secondary Education in China(中国的高等教育)</b> .....		103
Part I	Introduction(介绍): Getting Started(入门练习) .....	104
Part II	Conversation 1(对话1): Beijing University(北京大学) .....	108
Part III	Conversation 2(对话2): Department of Chinese Music at Shanghai Conservatory of Music(上海音乐学院民乐系) .....	112
Part IV	Intensive Reading(精读): The Annual College Entrance Examination in China(中国的高考) .....	116
Part V	Reading Passage(泛读): Splendid China 4: Hangzhou, a Splendid and Beautiful City(锦绣中华4:杭州——瑰丽漂亮的城市) ...	120
Part VI	Grammar Review(语法复习): Adverbial Clause (2)(状语从句2) .....	123
Part VII	Unit Review Exercises(单元综合练习) .....	130
<b>Unit 5 Chinese Holidays(中国的节日)</b> .....		135
Part I	Introduction(介绍): Getting Started(入门练习) .....	136
Part II	Conversation 1(对话1): Official Holidays in China(中国的法定假日) .....	141
Part III	Conversation 2(对话2): Traditional Holidays: Spring Festival & Christmas(传统节日:春节和圣诞节) .....	145
Part IV	Intensive Reading(精读): Official and Traditional Holidays in China and the United States(中美两国的法定假日和传统节日) .....	151
Part V	Reading Passage(泛读): Splendid China 5: The Charms of Sanya(锦绣中华5:迷人的三亚) .....	155
Part VI	Grammar Review(语法复习): Participles(分词) .....	159
Part VII	Unit Review Exercises(单元综合练习) .....	167

<b>Unit 6</b>	<b>Traditional Transportation( 传统交通工具)</b>	171
Part I	Introduction( 介绍): Getting Started( 入门练习)	172
Part II	Conversation 1( 对话 1): Pedicab Tours( 三轮车游)	176
Part III	Conversation 2( 对话 2): Bicycle Fun( 骑自行车的乐趣)	179
Part IV	Intensive Reading( 精读): Traditional Transportation: Pushing, Pulling and Pedaling( 传统交通[方式]:推、拉和脚踏)	186
Part V	Reading Passage( 泛读): Splendid China 6: Harbin's Ice Festival: A Winter Wonderland( 锦绣中华 6: 哈尔滨的冰雪节: 冬天的仙境)	190
Part VI	Grammar Review( 语法复习): The Subjunctive Mood ( 虚拟语气)	193
Part VII	Unit Review Exercises( 单元综合练习)	202
<b>Unit 7</b>	<b>Train Travel in China( 乘火车游中国)</b>	207
Part I	Introduction( 介绍): Getting Started( 入门练习)	208
Part II	Conversation 1( 对话 1): Traveling by Train in China ( 乘火车游中国)	211
Part III	Conversation 2( 对话 2): Bullet Trains( 高速列车)	215
Part IV	Intensive Reading( 精读): China's Amazing Trains( 中国令人惊奇的火车)	218
Part V	Reading Passage( 泛读): Splendid China 7: Huanglong Cave — an Underground Magic Palace( 锦绣中华 7: 黄龙洞 —— 地下魔幻宫)	221
Part VI	Grammar Review( 语法复习): Subject-verb Agreement ( 主谓一致)	224
Part VII	Unit Review Exercises( 单元综合练习)	231
<b>Unit 8</b>	<b>Flight Delays and Itinerary Flexibility( 航班延误与旅程变化)</b>	235
Part I	Introduction( 介绍): Getting Started( 入门练习)	236
Part II	Conversation 1( 对话 1): Oversold Flight( 超卖航班)	239
Part III	Conversation 2( 对话 2): Changing a Flight( 调换航班)	242
Part IV	Intensive Reading( 精读): Have a Good Trip! ( 一路顺风)	245
Part V	Reading Passage( 泛读): Splendid China 8: The Potala Palace ( 锦绣中华 8: 布达拉宫)	247
Part VI	Grammar Review( 语法复习): Inversion( 倒装句)	250
Part VII	Unit Review Exercises( 单元综合练习)	259

# Unit 1

## Ice Breakers and Community Building (相互了解和团队建设)

Breaking the ice and building the community can be accomplished in a variety of ways. Tourists usually travel with a friend or family member, but sometimes they join a tour group. Whatever the circumstances might be, it is important for everyone in the group to feel a certain camaraderie in the group. Indeed, relationships are often formed in tour groups that continue beyond the tour.

## Part I Introduction (介绍):

### Getting Started (入门练习)

#### A. Warm-up Exercises (预习)

Tour guides will come in contact with a variety of people in the tour groups they lead. The tour guide will be called on to, among other things, facilitate good group dynamics (团队互动). Therefore, an effective tour guide should be a good leader and somewhat extroverted (外向性格). Take the following personality quiz and see how you score in this area.

#### *EXTROVERT* (外向性格) *or* *INTROVERT* (内向性格)?

Circle the response for each question below that comes closest to your emotional response. Do not think about each response too much; instead, choose your answer quickly.

#### **THERE ARE NOT RIGHT OR WRONG ANSWERS!**

Then look below to evaluate your answers.

1. You are in a foreign country where you know only a few words of the language. You want to buy a peach, some chicken, and a bottle of wine. Do you ...
  - a) look up the right words in the dictionary and phrase book?
  - b) ask for the items in your native language and assume that someone will understand you?
  - c) try the host country's language, coupled with mime?
2. You hear joking and laughter from a corner as you walk across a room. Do you ...
  - a) look at the laughing group with a scowl (皱眉头)?
  - b) inspect your clothing?
  - c) stand tall and smile nicely at the people laughing?
3. When you order clothes, you order them ...
  - a) smaller than your current size, because you are going to lose weight?
  - b) your current size?
  - c) loose fitting for comfort?
4. Whenever your flight is late, you
  - a) immediately go to the airline staff to complain.
  - b) feel depressed and regret you took the trip.
  - c) think about how to best use the time while waiting for the flight.



5. Would a situation where a friend lied to you about something important ...
  - a) make you feel stupid?
  - b) show you the lack of integrity in your friend?
  - c) demonstrate that your relationship is not very good?
6. You are about to enter a crowded room alone where people are dressed nicely and loudly chatting and laughing. Do you ...
  - a) decide to walk in quietly and unnoticed, find a quiet corner, until you see a familiar face?
  - b) assure yourself that you are equally attractive and as social as anyone else there?
  - c) find the bar and have a couple of drinks to loosen up?
7. A person who knows you well ignores your greeting and passes you without a word or smile. Do you ...
  - a) assume that he/she was busy?
  - b) take offense and become preoccupied thinking about the situation?
  - c) find the person and ask him/her what you have done wrong?
8. It is late at night. The couple in the apartment above yours is playing loud music and laughing and talking loudly. Do you ...
  - a) feel annoyed and bang on the ceiling?
  - b) bury your head under a pillow, or find some ear plugs?
  - c) decide to get up and play some music of your own.
9. Family holidays are ...
  - a) uncomfortable and annoying.
  - b) a wonderful time to connect.
  - c) difficult, but worth it.
10. New Year's celebrations are ...
  - a) too much stress.
  - b) a good time to have fun.
  - c) a quiet time for reflection on your own.
11. Traveling with strangers in a tourist group is the kind of experience you
  - a) would never want.
  - b) would always welcome.
  - c) would accept only when there is no better choice.
12. Your boss holds a door open for you. You ...
  - a) walk through with a grateful smile.
  - b) say, "no, please, after you."
  - c) walk through, saying, "thank you very much."

To score the personality quiz, write down the points for each answer you gave in the blank for the total.

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. a) 2 b) 3 c) 1 _____  | 2. a) 3 b) 2 c) 1 _____  |
| 3. a) 3 b) 2 c) 1 _____  | 4. a) 3 b) 1 c) 2 _____  |
| 5. a) 2 b) 3 c) 1 _____  | 6. a) 2 b) 1 c) 3 _____  |
| 7. a) 1 b) 2 c) 3 _____  | 8. a) 3 b) 2 c) 1 _____  |
| 9. a) 3 b) 2 c) 1 _____  | 10. a) 2 b) 3 c) 1 _____ |
| 11. a) 2 b) 3 c) 1 _____ | 12. a) 1 b) 3 c) 2 _____ |
| <b>TOTAL</b> _____       |                          |

Read the interpretation of your score below.

**12-19:** You seem to have a balance between self-love and self-awareness, assurance and introspection (自我反省). You are confident, but not overly so. You are still sensitive towards others.

**20-27:** You are a bit timid, which sometimes keeps you from effective communication. You need to focus on your many achievements and train yourself to lead in taking responsibility so as to make positive contributions daily.

**28-36:** You see yourself as the life of the party. You are confident, but sometimes others may see you as opinionated and indifferent. Occasionally reflect on your own limitations so that you are able to better relate to others around you.

*Whatever your score was, it does not necessarily indicate an accurate or absolute determination of your personality. There are many factors that influence how you respond to emotional questions at any given time. However, the key is awareness of yourself and your interactions with others. As you work with groups of people, remember that it is good to look within one's self for assurance and confidence. It is also important to display a confident self-image to others.*

## B. Joy's Introductory Speech (林欢的开场白)

On the first full day of the tour, Joy encourages everyone to get to know each other during the tour and tells the group a little about herself.

## Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

diverse /daɪˈvɜːs/ <i>adj.</i>	of different kinds, different 多样化的, 形形色色的
generation /ˌdʒenəˈreɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	all people born at about the same time, an age group usually 10 years apart 一代人; 同时代的人
newlywed /ˈnjuːlɪwed/ <i>n.</i>	someone who is recently married; usually less than 6 months 新婚夫妇
marketing /ˈmɑːkɪtɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	the practice of presenting, advertising, and selling something 商品营销
textile /ˈtekstaɪl/ <i>n.</i>	fabric 织物; 纤维
export /ɪkˈspɔːt/ <i>v.</i>	send goods to another country 出口
feel free	feel comfortable doing something without needing permission 随便; 随意

“It is wonderful to see such a diverse group of visitors to my country. Even though we only have a few days together, I hope we will all get to know everyone in our group. We will be spending many Chinese style hours together on the bus, visiting some amazing sights, and eating many Chinese style meals together. Let me start by sharing a little bit about myself.

“I was born near Shanghai in a small town called Xitang. My mom and dad are also from Xitang. You might wonder why I decided to become a tour guide. My parents own a small souvenir shop in Xitang. I used to help them in the shop when I came home from school. That small shop is where I learned my first words in English, ‘May I help you?’ and ‘Thank you’. It was so interesting to see visitors from so many different countries.

“Like many people in my generation, I am an only child. Now I live with my husband in Hangzhou. We got married three months ago, so we are still newlyweds. He grew up in Hangzhou close to where we live now. He graduated from Zhejiang University last year with a degree in marketing. He works for a large textile company which exports clothing to many countries in the world. It’s good that we studied English in school since we both use English in our work.

“We both believe that health and exercise are important. We try to go to the gym at least once a week, and we take a long walk every day when the

weather is nice. Walking is a great exercise, and we can see what is going on in our neighborhood.

“Now I think you know a little bit about me, your tour guide! We will learn more about each other in the next few days. Please feel free to ask me anything. But now I want to know a little bit about you!”

### C. Listening for the Main Idea (泛听)

Listen to Joy's speech carefully, and then answer the following questions.

1. What aspects of her life does Joy share with the group?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Why did Joy become interested in a career as a tour guide?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Why is English important to Joy and her husband?

\_\_\_\_\_

### D. Filling in the Blanks (填空)

Now, listen to Joy's speech again and fill in the blanks.

“It is wonderful to see such a diverse group of visitors to my country. Even though we only have a few days (1) \_\_\_\_\_, I hope we will all get to know (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in our group. We will be (3) \_\_\_\_\_ many hours together on the bus, visiting some amazing (4) \_\_\_\_\_, and eating many meals together Chinese style. Let me start by (5) \_\_\_\_\_ a little bit about myself.

“I was born near Hangzhou in a small town (6) \_\_\_\_\_ Xitang. My mom and dad are also from Xitang. You might wonder why I decided to become a tour guide. My parents own a small (7) \_\_\_\_\_ shop in Xitang. I used to help them in the shop when I came home from school. That small shop is where I learned my first words in English, ‘May I help you?’ and ‘Thank you’. It was so (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to see visitors from so many different countries.

“Like many people in my generation, I am an only child. I live with my husband in Hangzhou. We got (9) \_\_\_\_\_ three months ago, so we are still newlyweds. He grew up in Hangzhou close to (10) \_\_\_\_\_ we live now. He graduated from Zhejiang University last year with a (11) \_\_\_\_\_ in marketing. He works for a large textile company which exports (12) \_\_\_\_\_ to many countries in the world. It's good that we studied English in school since we both use English in our work.

“We both believe that health and (13) \_\_\_\_\_ are important. We try to go

to the gym at (14) \_\_\_\_\_ once a week every morning and we take a long walk every day when the weather is nice. Walking is a great exercise and we can see what is going on in our neighborhood.

“Now I think you know a little (15) \_\_\_\_\_ about me, your tour guide! We will learn more about each other in the next few days. Please feel free to ask me anything. But now I want to know a little bit about you!”

### E. Listening for Details (精听)

After you have listened to Joy's speech several times, answer the following questions.

1. Where is Joy from?
2. What were the first words she learned in English?
3. How long has Joy been married?
4. What was her husband's major in university?
5. What two activities do they enjoy for exercise?

## Part II Conversation 1 (对话 1): Getting to Know You! (与你相识)

After Joy tells the group a little about herself, there are some questions.

### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

“oops” /ʊps/ <i>int.</i>	an expression used when (someone) makes a mistake. (表示惊讶、歉意等) 哎哟! 哎呀!
“the rest is history”	indicating that the remainder of the story or situation is understood or obvious 其余部分是人人皆知的
admiration /ˌædmə'reɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	feeling of respect or approval 仰慕
particularly /pə'tɪkjələli/ <i>adv.</i>	especially 尤其; 特别

Tom: Thank you, Joy. I do have one question. I was wondering how you met your husband. And what's his name? Oops! That's two questions!

Joy: Oh, my goodness, I forgot to tell you his name! His Chinese name is Tongmin, but he uses the name Thomas. I think it's easier for English

speakers to pronounce.

Nick: Yes, and it's easier to remember, too!

Joy: We went to the same university. He was a senior and I was one year below him. We both belonged to the English Club.

Nick: And as we say, "the rest is history."

Joy: Now let me ask a question to the group. I wonder who has been married the shortest time? And the longest time! Am I the newest newlywed?

Mike: I don't think anyone has been married less than a year in this group.  
(to the group) Anyone married less than a year?

(no one raises his/her hand)

Joy: O.K. Then who has been married the longest? If you have been married more than five years, raise your hand. (*five couples raise their hands*) More than ten? (*three couples remaining*) More than 15? (*two couples remaining*) More than 20? (*one remains, Mike and Dani*)

Mike: Wow! What do we win?

Joy: (*Joy laughs*) You win our admiration! So now we want to know how you met!

Tom: We also met when I was in high school, but he was in the military! He's four years older than I am! We met at a roller skating rink.

Joy: I hope you will share your secret to a long marriage!

Nick: Joy, have you traveled outside of China?

Joy: I'm sorry to say I haven't done that yet. I really hope I can visit the U. S. next year.

Nick: Be sure to visit California!

Joy: It's the first on my list. So let me ask the group another question. Think about all the places you have visited, both near and far. Can you think of one place that has a special memory, or that was particularly interesting?

Mike: Only one?

Joy: Yes, only one for now. At lunch today, share with the group at your table the place you have chosen, and then explain what made that trip memorable.

Mike: Hmmm. This should be interesting!



## B. Comprehension (综合理解)

Listen to the conversation again and decide if the following statements are True (T) or False (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Nick asks Joy a question about her husband.
2. \_\_\_\_ Joy thinks her husband's Chinese name is easy to pronounce for English speakers.
3. \_\_\_\_ Joy has been married the shortest time.
4. \_\_\_\_ Five couples have been married more than ten years.
5. \_\_\_\_ Mike and Dani met at university.
6. \_\_\_\_ Mike thinks there is a prize for being married the longest time.
7. \_\_\_\_ Joy has visited several foreign countries.
8. \_\_\_\_ The group will discuss their interesting trips at dinner.

Now rewrite the false statements to make them true.

---



---

## C. Speaking Activities (口语练习)

For the following speaking activities, form groups of four.

1. Practice the conversation with classmates. Try to use some of your own vocabulary to express the same ideas.
2. Open-ended questions are questions that promote a longer and more thoughtful answer than a closed question, which is only answered with Yes/No or one word. Open-ended questions are good questions to use when you want to have a conversation.

**Example:** Q. Did you sleep well? (This is NOT an open-ended question.)

A. Yes, great.

Q. What did you do after dinner last night? (This is an open-ended question.)

A. Well, we took a short walk to the shop on the corner. Then we came back and watched an interesting program on television.

Q. Oh, really. What did you watch?

(the conversation continues)

First, circle Yes or No for the questions in the following table. Then add two more open-ended questions of your own.

Practice asking and answering the questions.

Is this a good Open-ended question?		QUESTION
Yes	No	1. Are you retired?
Yes	No	2. Do you work?
Yes	No	3. How do you like the tour so far?
Yes	No	4. Are you married?
Yes	No	5. What has been your favorite activity on our tour so far?
Yes	No	6. Did you enjoy lunch?
Yes	No	7. How did you meet your wife?
Yes	No	8. What did your group discuss at lunch today?
Yes	No	9. What do you usually do after work?
Your question		10.
Your question		11.

### Part III Conversation 2 (对话2):

#### Birth Order and Personality (出生顺序与个性)

While waiting for the group to board the bus, Ann has a question for Joy.

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

one-child policy	the rule in China that says that married couples are suggested to have only one child 独生子女政策
exception /ɪk'sepʃən/ n.	something that doesn't follow the usual rule 例外
ethnic minority	culturally related group of people that is not of the dominant group in an area 少数民族
natural disaster	an event related to nature that results in great destruction and/or loss of lives such as hurricanes or earthquakes 自然灾害
break the rule	to do something that doesn't follow the usual regulations 破规矩; 犯规
incentive /ɪn'sentɪv/ n.	something that motivates someone to do sth. 鼓励; 刺激
adjust /ə'dʒʌst/ v.	change sth. in a small way 调整

statistic /stə'tɪstɪk/ <i>n.</i>	number and fact; data 统计
promote /prəʊ'məʊt/ <i>v.</i>	encourage 促进
hot topic	a subject that is popular for people to discuss and is often controversial 热门话题
abstinence /'æbstɪnəns/ <i>n.</i>	the act of not doing or having sth. that someone enjoys 节制
alternative /ɔ:l'tɜ:nətɪv/ <i>n.</i>	different choice 替代的; 两中择一的
outspoken /'aʊt'spəʊkən/ <i>adj.</i>	saying exactly what one thinks 直言不讳的; 坦率的

Mike: When you told us about yourself, you said you are an only child. Can you tell us a little bit about the one-child policy in China?

Joy: The one-child policy, or “Family Planning Policy” started in 1979 as a way to solve some of the social, economic and environmental problems in China.

Mike: Are there any exceptions to the rule?

Joy: Yes. For example, couples in rural areas, ethnic minorities, and parents without any siblings themselves may be allowed to have two children. Or exceptions might be made after a natural disaster such as the recent Sichuan earthquake.

Mike: What happens if someone breaks the rule?

Joy: That couple will have to pay an expensive fine, and sometimes may have problems in their work. They will also have to pay more for their children's education and health care compared to those who have only one child. There is a big incentive to follow the one-child policy.

Mike: That's a lot of pressure!

Joy: Yes, but the large majority of people understand the need to control population and support the policy.

(the group is settled on the bus)

Joy: Mike and I just had an interesting conversation about the one-child policy in China. As you may know, with some exceptions, couples in China are restricted from having more than one child.

John: Will that policy always be in place?

Joy: It will probably be adjusted in the next few years depending on various

statistics, but I believe there will always be a need to encourage family planning in China.

John: I agree! We also face the problem of how to promote family planning in the United States. It is a hot topic of debate.

Joy: Really? What is the debate about?

John: It's about the best way to prevent pregnancy. Some people believe sex education in our schools should only include abstinence as a way to prevent pregnancy. Others believe the education should include alternatives. There is no easy answer.

Joy: But the law does not limit the number of children a couple can have, right?

John: Right. Family size is an individual preference.

Joy: Wow. I'm learning a lot. So even though you do not have the one-child policy in the U. S., are any of you an only child?

(*Peter raises his hand*)

Peter: And I hated it when I was growing up! I always wanted a brother or a sister.

Meg: Oh, so you could "enjoy" all the fighting?!

Joy: I wonder if you are the oldest, Meg.

Meg: Yes, I am! I have two younger sisters. How did you know?

Joy: You are outspoken and a leader. First-born children usually like to be in control. We'll find out more about that later ...

(*the questioning and discussion continues*)

## B. Questions for Comprehension and Critical Thinking (综合理解和逻辑思考)

1. What is another name for the one-child policy?
2. Who might be given permission to have more than one child?
3. Why do you think couples in rural areas might be allowed to have more than one child?
4. Why do people observe the one-child policy?
5. Why is family planning a topic of debate in the U. S. ?
6. What does Meg think is a problem when you have siblings?

## C. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

1. Write the part of speech for each of the vocabulary words in the following table.  
An X indicates that there is no form for the word in that category or it is not

commonly used.

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Adverb
EX: abstinence	<i>abstain</i>	X	X
(1)	adjust	X	X
(2) alternative			
(3) incentive	X	X	
(4)		preferred	X
(5) promotion			X
(6)		restrictive	X
(7) particular	X		
(8)			exceptionally

2. Fill in the blank using vocabulary from the two conversations. Use each of the words in the box one time.

exceptions	rural	outspoken	incentive	promote
adjusted	admiration	alternatives	restricted	

- (1) Some people really love living in a big city, while others prefer to live in a \_\_\_\_\_ area.
- (2) The citizens of that country are not \_\_\_\_\_ from owning property.
- (3) There are only two \_\_\_\_\_ to that rule.
- (4) Someone \_\_\_\_\_ the temperature in our room. Now it's much more comfortable.
- (5) Debbie says what she thinks even if everyone doesn't agree. She's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- (6) Most students have a great \_\_\_\_\_ for patient and kind teachers.
- (7) The promise of an ice cream was a great \_\_\_\_\_ for my daughter to finish her homework quickly.
- (8) The group was offered several \_\_\_\_\_ to the planned picnic since it was raining.
- (9) Having interesting discussions \_\_\_\_\_ friendship among the members of a group.

## Part IV Intensive Reading (精读):

### Community Building (团队建设)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇和课文)

unique /ju:'ni:k/ <i>adj.</i>	one of a kind 独特的
source /sɔ:s/ <i>n.</i>	the place from which sth. comes 源泉; 出处
setting the tone	establishing a certain feeling 定调
amiable /'eɪmjəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	friendly, pleasant 和蔼可亲的; 和善的
camaraderie /kəmə'rɑ:dəri:/ <i>n.</i>	friendliness; trust among a group of people who spend time together 友谊; 情谊
fish out of water	be uncomfortable with new surroundings that are very unfamiliar 水土不服; 不适应 环境
reassure /ri:ə'fʊə/ <i>v.</i>	make sb. feel confident, remove fears or doubts 使安心; 安慰
armed with	be supplied with things that are useful 装备 的; 配备着的
knowledgeable /'nɒlɪdʒəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	having an understanding, to know something 有知识的; 懂行的
uncooperative /ˌʌŋkəʊ'ɒpəreɪtɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	not doing what is expected or necessary; not work with others for a common purpose 不配合的; 不合作的
critical /'krɪtɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	see things in a negative way 批评的
culture shock	a state of discomfort from being in an unfamiliar or foreign place surrounded by unfamiliar people and customs 文化震撼
insecure /ˌɪnsɪ'kjʊə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	a feeling of not being safe or supported 不安 的; 无安全感的
cohesive /kəʊ'hɪzɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	the state of togetherness, sticking together in a group 有凝聚性的
bring out the best	cause positive reactions and outcomes when interacting with others 显现最佳效果



facilitate /fə'sɪlɪteɪt/ v.	make sth., such as a discussion or group activity, happen more easily 促进; 协助
touchy /'tʌtʃɪ/ adj.	uncomfortable and somewhat offensive 过分敏感的; 易怒的; 棘手的
taboo /tə'buː/ adj. /n.	forbidden or culturally undesirable because of being offensive or rude 禁忌; 忌讳
political leaning	the beliefs and ideas related to politics and public affairs that a person favors 政治倾向
enhance /m'hɑːns/ v.	add to in a positive way, increase or improve 加强; 改进

A tour guide has a unique position as a leader of a group of visitors to a foreign place. A tour guide is not only the most important source of information, but he/she is also responsible for setting the tone of the trip. It is important for visitors to feel an amiable relationship with the tour guide as well as the other members in the tour group.

Tourists usually travel with a friend or family member, but sometimes they join a tour group because they are traveling alone. Whatever the circumstances might be, it is important for everyone in the group to feel a certain camaraderie in the group. Indeed, relationships are often formed in tour groups that continue beyond the tour.

To accomplish building this community, the tour guide must be friendly, patient, and open. Visitors to a foreign place often feel like “fish out of water.” They need to be reassured that they are safe and everything is taken care of. Even though they may be armed with a detailed agenda and everything else they could possibly need, they may still be a little uncomfortable. The two things that can help put them at ease are a leader that is knowledgeable, and a group that is enjoyable. Tourists need to form a trusting relationship with their tour guide so they are comfortable asking any question.

People react in different ways to unfamiliar surroundings. A tour guide may find that some tourists are a little distracted and may ask questions that have already been answered. Some tourists are shy or take more time than others to adjust to the new surroundings. Others may seem somewhat

uncooperative or a bit critical. Often this is a reaction to culture shock. When they don't understand the language or the customs of the people, they become insecure. A good tour guide recognizes that people are different, but also understands that a cohesive group will bring out the best in everyone.

Besides knowing that they can turn to the tour guide for help, tourists are happier when they have a friendly relationship with others in the group. Building that community among the members in the group will make the trip much more pleasant. Tourists will help each other in times when the tour guide is not around or busy with someone else. The key is to make everyone feel comfortable with each other by offering opportunities for them to get to know each other better.

"Breaking the ice" can be accomplished in a variety of ways. At the beginning, the tour guide can facilitate activities and discussions that bring out information about each of the visitors. When other members hear something interesting or familiar, it will serve as a comfortable means to open up a conversation with someone they don't already know. A tour guide should also be aware of topics or questions that are considered impolite, touchy subjects, or taboo in Western culture. Asking about age, job salary, how much something costs, religious beliefs, or political leanings is considered rude or too personal. However, questions about where someone works or what they do, where they live, family makeup (children, marital status, parents), hobbies, or pastimes are fine.

The members of a tour group may be together only a few days, but the time together will be greatly enhanced if the group is friendly and close. A leader who succeeds in helping members get to know each other will have a tour that is much more fun and memorable for everyone. Tourists will go home with great memories and a warm feeling about their China tour.

### B. Class Discussion (班级讨论)

1. What customs or differences might a tourist from the United States find strange in China? Think about shopping, eating, bathrooms, transportation, etc.
2. Would any of the "touchy" topics listed in the reading be considered touchy in Chinese culture? What, if any, conversation topics might be considered touchy or taboo in Chinese culture? Think about conversations among acquaintances, co-workers, friends, or with parents or grandparents.

### C. Writing Exercises (写作练习)

1. Write a short response to one of the following criticisms from an unhappy tourist.
  - A. I'm really sick of all this Chinese food.
  - B. People drive crazy in this country!
  - C. This whole idea of bargaining is insane.
  - D. Why don't they use knives and forks like everyone else in the world?
  - E. Why do we always have to leave our hotel so early?
  - F. Beans for breakfast? That's ridiculous!
2. Write a short paragraph on one of the following topics. Be sure to use examples to make your ideas clearer.
  - A. Describe the traits of a good tourist.
  - B. Describe the traits of a difficult tourist.
  - C. Describe the traits of a good tour guide.
  - D. What do you think a tourist might write in his/her daily journal? Pretend you are a tourist in your tour group. Write a diary entry for one day of the tour.

## Part V Reading Passage (泛读):

### Splendid China 1: The Chengdu Panda Breeding Research Center (锦绣中华 1: 成都大熊猫繁育研究基地)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

panda /'pændə/ <i>n.</i>	large rare bear-like black and white animal living in the mountains of SW China 大熊猫
treasure /'treʒə/ <i>n.</i>	highly valued object 宝物; 珍宝; 珍品
extinction /ɪks'tɪŋkʃən/ <i>n.</i>	not in existence, especially a kind of plant or animal 灭绝; 绝种
range /reɪndʒ/ <i>n.</i>	connected line or row of mountains, hills, etc. (山、丘等连贯而成的) 脉; 排
<i>v.</i>	cover a wide area 涉及
province /'prɒvɪns/ <i>n.</i>	any of the main administrative divisions in certain countries 省; 大行政区
consume /kən'sju:m/ <i>v.</i>	use up 用尽; 消耗

deforest /di:'fɔ:rist/ v.	remove forests from (a place) 采伐森林; 消除树木
breeding /'bri:diŋ/ n.	the activity of keeping animals in order to produce particular qualities 繁殖; 饲养
goal /gəʊl/ n.	object of one's efforts; target 目标; 目的
reproduce /ˌri:prə'dju:s/ v.	(of humans, animals, insects, etc.) produce (offspring) by natural means 繁殖; 生殖
habitat /'hæbitæt/ n.	natural environment of an animal or a plant (动物或植物的) 自然环境; 栖息地
surroundings /sə'raʊndɪŋz/ n.	everything around the place or area in which one is located 环境; 周围的事物
acre /'eɪkə/ n.	measure of land, about 4050 square metres 英亩 (等于约 4 050 平方米)
captivity /kæp'tɪvɪtɪ/ n.	when an animal is kept in a cage etc. and not allowed to go where they want 囚禁; 束缚
tractor /'træktə/ n.	powerful motor vehicle used for pulling farm machinery of other heavy equipment 拖拉机; 牵引机
pen /pen/ n.	small piece of land surrounded by a fence, esp. for keeping animals in 圈; 围栏
cub /kʌb/ n.	young fox, bear, lion, tiger, etc. (狐、熊、狮、虎等的) 幼兽
litter /'lɪtə/ n.	all the young born to an animal at one time (一胎所生的) 小动物; 一窝
female /'fi:meɪl/ adj.	of the sex that can give birth to children or produce eggs 雌性的; 女的; 母的
surpass /sɜ:ˈpɑ:s/ v.	do or be better than somebody or something 优于或超过某人或某事物
species /'spi:ʃi:z/ n.	a grouping of animals or plants 物种; 种
stork /stɔ:k/ n.	large (usu. white) water bird with a long beak, neck and legs 白鹤
crane /kreɪn/ n.	large bird with long legs, neck and beak 鹤; 鹭
endangered /ɪn'deɪndʒəd/ adj.	(the population) being so small that it may die out 有危险的; 濒于灭绝的

global /'gləʊbəl/ *adj.*

covering or affecting the whole world;  
world-wide 全球性的; 全世界的

award /ə'wɔ:d/ *n.*

a prize honor, etc. given to someone for  
outstanding performance 奖品; 奖状

comprehensive /ˌkɒmprɪ'hensɪv/ *adj.*

that includes (nearly) everything 全面的

Pandas are only found in China. They're a national treasure and are loved by people the world over. But now pandas face extinction. At one time they lived in lowland forests. But because of man's farming, forest clearing, and other developments, pandas have been forced to mountain ranges in the central provinces of Sichuan, Shanxi, and Gansu (about 1,500 to 3,000 meters in elevation). A wild giant panda's diet is 99% bamboo, and usually consumes 20 to 40 pounds of bamboo each day. Those mountains have dense forests with bamboo. If man deforests these areas even farther, pandas will have no where else to go. Estimates range that only about 1,000 to 1,600 pandas live in the wild today. And unfortunately, not enough is being done to protect pandas.

Located just 10km away from downtown Chengdu, the Chengdu Panda Breeding Research Center had been created. The research center's goal is to reproduce the pandas' natural habitat in order to give pandas the best possible surroundings for rearing and breeding. The current goal is to raise pandas so that they can go and survive in the wild.

The Chengdu Panda Breeding and Research Center is spread over an open area of 92 acres. 96% of this area is green, providing similar surroundings as their native habitat. The human-made building structures are similar to natural forest settings. And for workers and visitors, there are rules. Scientists believe that pandas reproduce well in the wild, but have proven tough to breed in captivity. Tractors with rocks that pass the Breeding Pens must be silent. The care and attention to pandas has worked so far.

From 1980 to 1997, 46 cubs in 31 litters have been born in captivity in Chengdu. Of these cubs, 27 have survived. Mei Mei, a female panda



from Chengdu, has been described as a “supermom” because she gave birth to 11 cubs in nine litters. Seven cubs survived. Her daughter Qing Qing surpassed her, and gave birth to 13 cubs in 9 litters.

The Research Center wants to help visitors become familiar with Chengdu and giant pandas. While at the center, visitors are educated about environmental protection and science. They can also observe more than 20 species of rare animals including giant pandas, red pandas, white storks and black-necked cranes. Located at the research center is the Giant Panda Museum that opened in 1993, which provides interesting educational information about a variety of species native to China.

Many talented and knowledgeable scientists work at the Research Center, which has the most technologically advanced facilities in China. Some of their research projects are the most advanced in the world. Ideas and information at the Research Center are exchanged with universities and other research institutions around the world. Much advancement has been made: 50 projects have been researched on endangered species. 30 of these projects have won National Science and Technology Awards, such as: 1) Global 500 Award from the United Nations Environmental Planning Department, 2) China's Gold Medal for Scientific Technology of Plants, which is the highest award given for China's environmental protection, and 3) the Excellent National Project for Comprehensive Improvement of Environment Award.

### B. Questions for Reading Comprehension (阅读理解题)

1. Where are pandas presently living and why?

---

2. Why was the Chengdu Panda Breeding Research Center created?

---

3. Why is the Research Center well-suited for breeding of pandas?

---

4. Tell the significance of panda Mei Mei.

---

5. Besides helping pandas breed, what else does the Research Center do?

---

6. What enabled the Research Center to excel?

---



## Part VI Grammar Review (语法复习):

### Noun Clauses (名词性从句)

#### A. Grammar Explanations (语法解释)

##### 1. Function of Noun Clauses(名词性从句的作用)

A noun clause is a clause which does the work of a noun in a sentence. Like any noun, a noun clause can be used as the subject of a verb, the object of a verb, and the complement of a linking verb. (名词性从句的作用相当于名词在句中所起的作用。如同名词一样,名词性从句可用作谓语动词的主语、宾语或连系动词的表语。)

Function (作用)	Sample Sentence (例句)
Subject (主语)	<u>Why I am unhappy</u> is because I can't go on my vacation until next year. 我不高兴的原因是我要到明年才能休假。
Object (宾语)	While you're traveling you should watch <u>what you eat and drink</u> . 旅游时你应该注意饮食。
Predicative (表语)	The key is <u>that we get to the train station on time</u> . 关键是我们必须准时到达火车站。

##### 2. Formation of Noun Clauses(名词性从句的构成)

###### (1) To change a **statement** to a noun clause (由陈述句改变为名词性从句)

When a statement is changed to a noun clause, use the word “**that**” to introduce the clause. (由陈述句改变为名词性从句时,通常用连词 **that** 引导从句。)

Statement (陈述句)	Noun Clause (名词性从句)
Shanghai is a modern city. (上海是一座现代化城市。)→	A. That Shanghai is a modern city is obvious. B. It is obvious (that) Shanghai is a modern city. (显而易见,上海是一座现代化城市。)
Billy bought the movie ticket yesterday. (昨天比利买了电影票。)→	C. I know(that) Billy bought the movie ticket yesterday. (我知道昨天比利买了电影票。)
We should leave early tomorrow. (我们明天应该早些出发。)→	D. My idea is (that) we should leave early tomorrow. (我的想法是我们明天应该早些出发。)

## Notes (注解)

- A noun clause beginning with “that” can be used as the subject of a verb as in A. and B.; the object of a verb as in C., and the predicative of a linking verb as in D. (that 引导的名词性从句可用作动词的主语如 A 和 B 句;也可用作动词的宾语如 C 句或连系动词的表语如 D 句。)
- The word “that” in a noun clause simply marks the beginning of the clause. It has no meaning in itself and is often omitted as in B, C and D (连词 that 在从句中只起连接主句和从句的作用,不担任任何成分,本身也没有词义,因此通常可以被省略如 B, C 和 D 句。)
- When a noun clause is used as the subject of a sentence, the noun clause is commonly placed at the end of the sentence and the word “it” functions as the subject, as in B. (名词性从句作主语时通常用 it 作先行词,而将从句置于句末如 B 句。)

(2) To change a **Yes/No question**, **alternative question**, and **tag question** to a noun clause (由一般疑问句、选择疑问句或反意疑问句改变为名词性从句。)

When a Yes/No question, alternative question, or tag question is changed to a noun clause, “**whether**” or “**if**” is often used to introduce the clause. (由一般疑问句、选择疑问句或反意疑问句改变为名词性从句时,通常由连词 **whether** 或 **if** 引导从句。)

Question (疑问句)	Noun Clause (名词性从句)
<b>Yes/No question</b> (一般疑问句) Is John coming? (约翰会来吗?)→	A. <u>Whether John is coming</u> is important. B. It is important <u>whether John is coming</u> . (约翰是否来很重要。)
Will we go to the Great Wall tomorrow? (我们明天去长城吗?)→	C. I wonder <u>whether/if we will go to the Great Wall tomorrow</u> . D. I wonder <u>whether or not we will go to the Great Wall tomorrow</u> . E. I wonder <u>whether we will go to the Great Wall tomorrow or not</u> . (我不知道我们明天是否会去长城。)
Can they get along well? (他们能相处好吗?)→	F. The question is <u>whether they can get along well</u> . (问题是他们是否能相处好。)

续表

Question (疑问句)	Noun Clause (名词性从句)
<p><u>alternative question</u> (选择疑问句)</p> <p>Is this umbrella yours or hers? (这把伞是你的还是她的?)→</p> <p>Do you want tea or coffee? (你想要茶还是咖啡?)→</p>	<p>G. I wonder <u>whether this umbrella is yours or hers</u>. (我不知道这把伞是你的还是她的。)</p> <p>H. I wonder <u>whether you want tea or coffee</u>. 我不知道你想要茶还是咖啡。</p>
<p><u>tag question</u> (反意疑问句)</p> <p>You have been to Japan, haven't you? (你去过日本,不是吗?)→</p>	<p>I. I wonder <u>whether/if you have been to Japan</u>. (我不知道你是否去过日本。)</p>

## Notes (注解)

- The word “whether” or “if” in a noun clause simply marks the beginning of the clause. It has its own meaning and can't be omitted. (连词 whether 或 if 起连接主句和从句的作用,意为“是否”,不能省略。)
- In a noun clause, the subject comes before the verb. The question word order changes to statement word order of “S + (Aux + ) V”. (在名词性从句中主语在谓语动词前。名词性从句不用疑问句词序,而要用陈述句的“主语 + [助动词 + ]动词”词序。)
- Noun clauses beginning with “whether” or “if” can both be used as the object of a verb, as in C., D. and E. But “whether” is preferred in the subject position as in A. and B. or in the predicative position as in F. (whether 与 if 均可用来引导作宾语从句的名词性从句,如 C,D 和 E 句,但通常只用 whether 来引导主语从句如 A 和 B 句或表语从句如 F 句。)
- “Whether” is preferred when the noun clause has “or” or “or not”, as in D., E., G. and H. The phrase “or” or “or not” can be used together with “whether”, as in D. or separately as in E. (如名词性从句中有 or 和 or not,通常只用 whether。or 和 or not 既可以与 whether 放在一起用如 D 句,又可置于从句末如 E 句。)

(3) To change a **wh-question** to a noun clause (由特殊疑问句改变为名词性从句)

When a wh-question is changed to a noun clause, the following question words can be used to introduce the clause: what, who, whom, whose, which, and when, where, how, why. (特殊疑问句改变为名词性从句时,可以用 what, who, whom, whose, which 等连接代词或 when, where, how, why 等连接副词引导从句。)

Wh-question (特殊疑问句)	Noun Clause (名词性从句)
Who is our guide today? (谁是我们今天的导游?)→ Whose luggage is that? (那是谁的行李?)→	A. Please tell me who our guide is today. (请告诉我谁是我们今天的导游。) B. I wonder whose luggage that is. (我不知道那是谁的行李。)
Who lives on this island? (谁住在这岛上?)→ What happened on the bus? (公交车上发生了什么事情?)→	C. I don't know who lives on this island. (我不知道谁住在这岛上。) D. Please tell me what happened on the bus. (请告诉我公交车上发生了什么事情。)
When will Flight 135 arrive? (135 号航班什么时候到达?)→ Where will we go tomorrow? (我们明天到哪里去?)→	E. When Flight 135 will arrive is hard to say. (135 号航班什么时候到达很难说。) F. Where we will go tomorrow is not decided yet. (我们明天到哪里去还没有决定。)

### Notes (注解)

- Don't use question word order in a noun clause. In a noun clause the word order changes back to statement word order of "subject + (auxi +) verb", as in A. and B. (名词性从句不用疑问句词序,而要改回陈述句的“主语 + [助动词 + ]动词”词序,如 A 和 B 句。)
- The word order is the same in both the question and the noun clause if the question word is the subject of the noun clause, as in C. and D. (如果疑问词是名词性从句的主语,句子的词序不变,如 C 和 D 句。)
- When a noun clause is used as the subject of a verb, it takes a singular verb, as in F. (名词性从句作主语时,谓语动词用单数,如 F 句。)

### 3. Reported/Indirect Speech (间接引语)

Using quotation marks to say exactly what someone has said is called quoted/direct speech. Reported/Indirect speech refers to using a noun clause to report what somebody has said and doesn't use quotation marks. (引用别人的原话,放在引号内,称为直接引语;用名词性从句转述别人的话,不用引号,称为间接引语。)

#### (1) Tense changes in reported speech (间接引语中的时态变化)

Direct Speech (直接引语)	Indirect Speech (间接引语)
John said, "I live in New York." (约翰说:“我住在纽约。”) →	A. John said (that) he <u>lived</u> in New York. (约翰说他住在纽约。)
John said, "I am having a good time." (约翰说:“我过得很愉快。”) →	B. John said (that) he <u>was having</u> a good time. (约翰说他过得很愉快。)
John said, "I have visited China twice." (约翰说:“我到过中国两次。”) →	C. John said (that) he <u>had visited</u> China twice. (约翰说他到过中国两次。)
John said, "I went to Paris three years ago." (约翰说:“我三年前去过了巴黎。”) →	D. John said (that) he <u>had gone</u> to Paris three years before. (约翰说他三年前去过了巴黎。)
John said, "The movie had already started when I arrived." (约翰说:“当我到达时电影已经开始了。”) →	E. John said (that) the movie <u>had already started</u> when he <u>arrived</u> . (约翰说当他到达时电影已经开始了。)
John said, "I will watch the movie tonight." (约翰说:“我今晚会上去看这部电影。”) →	F. John said (that) he <u>would watch</u> the movie <u>that night</u> . (约翰说他那天晚上会去看那部电影。)
John said, "The sun rises from the east." (约翰说:“太阳从东方升起。”) →	G. John said (that) the sun <u>rises</u> from the east. (约翰说太阳从东方升起。)
John says, "Mary goes jogging every day." (约翰说:“玛丽每天慢跑。”) →	H. John says Mary <u>goes</u> jogging every day. (约翰说玛丽每天慢跑。)

### Notes (注解)

- When we use reported speech, we are usually talking about a time in the past. If the reporting verb is the simple past (such as "He said..."), the verb in the noun clause will also be in the past form. Commonly we move the noun clause "one tense back" to fit to the time of reporting. A general rule is given below: (我们用间接引语时,通常在谈论过去的情况。例如:主句的谓语叙说动词为过去时态[如 He said...],间接引语中的谓语动词也要改为相应的过去时态。间接引语中的谓语动词也要作相应的变化,一般在时间上“推后一个时态”。通常按以下规律变动:)

Direct Speech (直接引语)	Indirect Speech (间接引语)
一般现在时 →	一般过去时
现在进行时 →	过去进行时
现在完成时 →	过去完成时
一般过去时 →	(多数变为)过去完成时
过去完成时 ↔	过去完成时 (不变)
一般将来时 →	一般过去将来时

- If the verb in the reported speech is simple past with a specific past time adverb, the verb can remain unchanged. (直接引语中的动词如是一般过去时态, 与一个具体的表示过去时间的状语连用, 动词可不变。)

Mary said: “I immigrated to New York in 2005.”

→ Mary said that she immigrated to New York in 2005.

(玛丽说她 2005 年移民来纽约。)

- If the reporting verb in the sentence is in the past tense, you have to change adverb of time or place in indirect speech to fit in with the time of reporting. A general rule is given below: (如主句的谓语叙说动词为过去时态, 间接引语中的有些时间或地点状语也要作相应的变化。一般按以下规律变动:)

Direct Speech (直接引语)	Indirect Speech (间接引语)
now →	then/immediately
today →	that day
this week (month, year, etc.) →	that week (month, year, etc.)
yesterday →	the day before
yesterday morning (afternoon, evening)	the morning (afternoon, evening) before
a week (month, year, etc.) ago →	a week (month, year, etc.) before; the previous week (month, year, etc.)
last week (month, year, etc.) →	the week (month, year, etc.) before
tomorrow →	the next/following day
next week (month, year, etc.) →	the next/following (month, year, etc.)
here →	there

- However, when the reported speech deals with a general truth, the present tense is used, even if the reporting verb is in the past tense as in G. (如直接引语谈论的是普遍真理, 即使主句的谓语动词为过去时态, 间接引语仍用一般现在时, 如 G 句。)
- If the reporting verb is the simple present, present perfect or future, the verb remains the same in direct speech and indirect speech, as in H. (如主句的谓语动词为一般现在时、现在完成时或一般将来时, 直接引语或间接引语的动词时态不变, 如 H 句。)

## (2) Modal verb changes in reported speech (间接引语中情态动词的变化)



Direct Speech (直接引语)	Indirect Speech (间接引语)
John said, "I <b>can</b> solve the problem." (约翰说:“我能解决这个问题。”)→	G. John said (that) he <b>could</b> solve the problem. (约翰说他能解决这个问题。)
John said, "I <b>must</b> leave <b>now</b> ." (约翰说:“我现在必须走了。”)→	H. John said (that) he <b>had</b> to leave <b>then</b> . (约翰说他当时必须走了。)
John said, "I <b>may</b> come early." (约翰说:“我会早点回来。”)→	I. John said (that) he <b>might</b> come early. (约翰说他会早点回来。)
John said, "I <b>should</b> go shopping <b>today</b> ." (约翰说:“我今天要去购物。”)→	J. John said (that) he <b>should</b> go shopping <b>that day</b> . (约翰说他那天要去购物。)
John said, "I <b>ought to</b> go shopping <b>today</b> ." (约翰说:“我今天应该去购物。”)→	K. John said (that) he <b>ought</b> to go shopping <b>that day</b> . (约翰说他那天应该去购物。)

### Note (注解)

- If the reporting word uses the past tense, some modal verbs in reported speech need to be changed to fit to the time of reporting. A general rule is given below: (如主句的谓语动词为过去时态,间接引语中的有些情态动词要作相应的变化。一般按以下规律变动:)

Direct Speech (直接引语)	Indirect Speech (间接引语)
will →	would
can →	could
must →	had to
have to →	had to
shall →	should
may →	might
should →	should (不变)
ought to →	ought to (不变)

### (3) Pronoun changes in indirect speech (间接引语中代词的变化)

John said, "I'll send you a card, Susan." (约翰说:“我会送你一张贺卡,苏珊。”)→	<p>A. John told Susan (that) he would send her a card. (reported by someone else) (约翰告诉苏珊他会送她一张贺卡。)(由他人转述)</p> <p>B. John told me (that) he would send me a card. (reported by Susan) (约翰告诉我他会送我一张贺卡。)(由苏珊叙述)</p> <p>C. I told Susan (that) I would send her a card. (reported by John) (我告诉苏珊我会送她一张贺卡。)(由约翰叙述)</p>
---	---

**Note (注解)**

- Pronoun changes in indirect speech depending on the view of the reporter as in A., B. and C. (间接引语中代词的变化视说话人的角度而定,如 A,B 和 C 句。)

**(4) The imperative in indirect speech (祈使句转化为间接引语)**

Direct Speech (直接引语)	Indirect Speech (间接引语)
John said, “ <b>Bring</b> an umbrella.” (约翰说: “带把伞。”)→	E. John advised me <u>to bring</u> an umbrella. (约翰建议我带把伞。)
John said, “ <b>Don’t</b> wait for <b>me</b> .” (约翰说: “别等我。”)→	F. John told me <u>not to wait for him</u> . (约翰叫我别等他。)

**Note (注解)**

- In indirect speech, the imperative is changed to an infinitive. The reporting verbs that match the function of the imperative are “ask, tell, advise, remind” and etc. (在间接引语中,祈使句改变为不定式,与祈使句相配的动词有 ask, tell, advise, remind 等。)

**B. Grammar Exercises (语法练习)****1. Complete the following sentences by using one of the words below.**

how	how much	if/whether	that	what	whether or not
when	where	which	who	whose	why

- (1) Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ pen this is?
- (2) Mother’s Day and Father’s Day remind us \_\_\_\_\_ important our parents are and that we should appreciate and respect them.
- (3) I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ I should give the message to.
- (4) I can’t remember \_\_\_\_\_ this bag cost.
- (5) You might wonder \_\_\_\_\_ I decided to become a tour guide.
- (6) Joy asked Nick to explain \_\_\_\_\_ made that trip so enjoyable.
- (7) Jim has trouble deciding \_\_\_\_\_ place he wants to visit this year.
- (8) If you’re traveling with a group of old people, you should know \_\_\_\_\_ the first-aid kit is.
- (9) Mike wonders \_\_\_\_\_ anyone has been married less than a year in their

group.

- (10) It's good \_\_\_\_\_ we studied English in school since we both use English in our work.
- (11) Travel agents often ask you \_\_\_\_\_ you would like to buy traveler's insurance.
- (12) My favorite Christmas activity is \_\_\_\_\_ our family decorates the Christmas tree.

2. Complete the short passage, using the information given in the dialogue.

Example:

- Dani: Can we still get tickets to the concert this weekend?
- Joy: I have already bought them.
- When Dani asked Joy if she could get tickets to the concert that weekend, Joy told him that she had already bought them.
- (1) Dani: I was wondering how you met your husband. And what's his name?
- Joy: His Chinese name is Tong Min, but he uses the name Thomas. I think it's easier for English speakers to pronounce.
- When Dani asked \_\_\_\_\_ Joy and her husband met and \_\_\_\_\_, Joy said that his Chinese name was Tong Min; but he used the name Thomas because it was easier for English speaker to pronounce.
- (2) Joy: Now let me ask a question to the group. I wonder who has been married the shortest time. And the longest time! Am I the newest newlywed?
- Mike: (To the group:) I don't think anyone has been married less than a year in this group. Anyone married less than a year?
- Joy asked the group who \_\_\_\_\_ the shortest time and the longest time. She wondered \_\_\_\_\_ she was the newest newlywed. Mike didn't think that anyone \_\_\_\_\_ less than a year in that group. But to make sure, he asked the group \_\_\_\_\_ anyone had been married less than a year.
- (3) Dani: We also met when I was in high school, but he was in the military! He's four years older than I am! We met at a roller skating rink.
- Joy: I hope you will share your secret to a long marriage!
- Dani told the group that she and her husband met when he was in

the military. Dani said her husband was four years older than \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ at a roller skating rink. Joy hoped that Dani and her husband \_\_\_\_\_ their secret to a long marriage.

(4) Nick: Joy, have you traveled outside of China?

Joy: I'm sorry to say I haven't done that yet. I really hope I can visit the U. S. next year.

→ When Nick asked \_\_\_\_\_ Joy had traveled outside of China, she was sorry to say she \_\_\_\_\_ yet and she really hoped she \_\_\_\_\_ the U. S. \_\_\_\_\_.

(5) Nick: Be sure to visit California!

Joy: It's first on my list. So let me ask the group another question. Think about all the places you have visited, both near and far. Can you think of one place that has a special memory, or that was particularly interesting?

→ Nick told Joy \_\_\_\_\_ California if she could go to the U. S. Joy said California was first on her list. Then she told the group \_\_\_\_\_ about all the places they had visited, both near and far. She asked them \_\_\_\_\_ one place that had a special memory, or that was particularly interesting.

(6) Nick: Will we be able to visit Oriental Pearl and Yu Garden, too?

Joy: We will if we leave the hotel before 9 o'clock tomorrow morning.

→ Nick asked Joy whether they \_\_\_\_\_ to visit Oriental Pearl and Yu Garden, too. Joy told him they \_\_\_\_\_ if they \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel before 9 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_.

(7) Dani: It's raining heavily outside. You'd better take an umbrella.

Nick: It'll stop soon. I don't need one.

→ Dani told Nick that it was raining heavily outside and that he had better take an umbrella. However, Nick thought that the rain \_\_\_\_\_ soon and that he \_\_\_\_\_ one.

(8) Mike: I can't take a trip to Hainan.

Dani: Oh? Why not?

Mike: I don't have enough money for the trip.

→ When Dani asked Mike why he \_\_\_\_\_ to Hainan, Mike replied that he \_\_\_\_\_ enough money for the trip.

3. Correct the errors in the following sentences. Some sentences contain no error.

- (1) Helen asked me if I can speak French.
- (2) Tell the taxi driver where do you want to go.
- (3) Tom wondered why I was so tired this day.
- (4) My mom asked me if I had enjoyed my trip or not.
- (5) I can't decide whether I should go by plane or by train.
- (6) We looked back to see where far we were from our camp.
- (7) My tour guide asked me where I would like to be tomorrow.
- (8) Dani asked how long did it take to get to Chengdu from Shanghai.
- (9) The receptionist asked me how many nights I planned to stay.
- (10) When your tour guide starts to describe the area, you can ask yourself where place you'd like to visit.
- (11) My mom often tells me don't forget to call the family when I'm away from home.
- (12) It's good which we studied English in school since we both use English in our work.

4. The following is a conversation that takes place at the Customs Gate. Read the conversation.

Officer: Next. Uh, your passport please. What is the purpose of your visit?

Woman: I'm here to attend a teaching conference for the first part of my trip, and then I plan on touring the capital for a few days.

Officer: And where will you be staying?

Woman: I'll be staying at a hotel downtown for the entire week.

Officer: And uh, what do you have in your luggage?

Woman: Uh, well, just my personal belongings um ... clothes, a few books.

Officer: Okay. Uh, please open your bag.

Woman: Sure.

Officer: Okay ... Everything's fine. Uh, by the way, is this your first visit to the country?

Woman: Well, yes and no. Actually, I was born here when my parents were working in the capital many years ago, but this is my first trip back since then.

Officer: Well, enjoy your trip.

Woman: Thanks.

Exercise 1: First change the underlined parts into noun clauses. Make necessary changes of tense, time and pronouns in indirect speech.

- (1) Officer: Next. Uh, your passport please.

The officer asked the woman \_\_\_\_\_.

- (2) Officer: What is the purpose of your visit?

The officer would like to know \_\_\_\_\_.

- (3) Officer: Where will you be staying?

The officer asked the woman \_\_\_\_\_.

- (4) Officer: What do you have in your luggage?

The officer wanted the woman to show \_\_\_\_\_.

- (5) Officer: Is this your first visit to the country?

The officer asked the woman \_\_\_\_\_.

Exercise 2: Imagine you are the passenger at the Customs Gate. Answer the following questions.

- (1) Officer: What is the purpose of your visit?

\_\_\_\_\_

- (2) Officer: Where will you be staying?

\_\_\_\_\_

- (3) Officer: What do you have in your luggage?

\_\_\_\_\_

- (4) Officer: Is this your first visit to the country?

\_\_\_\_\_

## Part VII Unit Review Exercises (单元综合练习)

### A. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

In each group of words below, one word or phrase doesn't belong. Circle the word, and then explain why the word does not belong.

Word/Phrase Group	Reason
1.  amiable camaraderie cohesive knowledgeable	
2.  uncomfortable uncooperative responsive insecure	
3.  zodiac palmistry numerology political leaning	
4.  critical insecure open distracted	
5.  facilitate fish out of water set the tone reassure	
6.  family makeup political leanings job salary religious beliefs	

## B. Dictation (听写)

First, listen to the entire paragraph to understand the main idea. Then listen to each sentence carefully and write down exactly what you hear on a separate piece of paper. Finally, listen to the whole paragraph one more time to check your sentences.

## C. Sentence combination (句子组合)

### 1. Using *although* versus *if*

- Circle the word you would use to combine the two clauses.
- Write the combined sentence on the line.

A. although/if the weather was nice. We were too tired to take a walk.

---

B. although/if joy travels to the United States. She will visit California first.

---

C. although/if someone breaks the rule. They have to pay fine.

---

D. although/if Americans believe family planning is important. They don't always agree on the best method.

---

E. although/if we will get to know each other well. We only have a few days together.

---

F. although/if a couple has no siblings. They can get permission to have more than one child.

---

### 2. Using noun clauses: why, who, where, what, how, that

- Circle the word that would best combine the two clauses.
- In numbers 11 and 12, write two of your own sentences using a noun clause.

(1) Joy was surprised *what/that/who* some tourists might feel like fish out of water.

(2) Ann didn't understand *why/how/where* China has a one-child policy.

(3) Meg wants to know *what/who/why* has the most siblings.

(4) Dan wasn't sure *what/that/how* to convert dollars to *Yuan*.



- (5) Joy told the group *how/where/what* they would meet after shopping.
- (6) A good tour guide understands *why/what/who* some tourists are uncomfortable.
- (7) Everyone talked about *why/how/what* they did in the free time after lunch.
- (8) Mike was embarrassed because he didn't know *how/where/what* to say "thank you" in Chinese.
- (9) The people in the back couldn't hear *how/why/what* the speaker was saying.
- (10) Dan and Debbi couldn't decide *how/where/that* to go for dinner.
- (11) (your sentence) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (12) (your sentence) \_\_\_\_\_.

#### D. Translation (翻译)

##### 1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.

- (1) There are a few exceptions to the rule.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (2) Will the one-child policy always be in place?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (3) A tour guide is also responsible for community building.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (4) I'm glad I studied English in school because I use it a lot in my job.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (5) I think it is pretty hard for English speakers to pronounce your Chinese name correctly.  
\_\_\_\_\_

##### 2. Translate the following sentences into English.

- (1) 你们也许会好奇我为什么要当导游。  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (2) 你们之中有谁结婚不到一年吗?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (3) 他们非常喜欢漫步畅游紫禁城。  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (4) 步行是很好的健身运动。  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (5) 旅游者需要放心地感到他们是安全的,一切都做了妥善的安排。  
\_\_\_\_\_

# Unit 1

# Unit 2

## Traditional Performing Arts ( 传统表演艺术 )

In this unit, Joy prepares her tour group to see performances of Shanghai acrobatics and Beijing Opera. The tourists are more familiar with acrobatics, but they aren't so sure how they will like the opera. Joy gives them some additional background on Beijing Opera so they'll be able to appreciate it more fully.

## Part I Introduction (介绍):

### Getting Started (入门练习)

#### A. Warm-up Exercises (预习)

How well do you know Beijing Opera? Form teams of two and circle one answer for each question. When you are finished, check your answers with the answer key and give your team one point for each correct odd-numbered answer and two points for each correct even-numbered answer. The team that gets the highest score wins!

TEAM: \_\_\_\_\_ SCORE: \_\_\_\_\_

1. The first dramatic school in China was formed during which dynasty?  
a. Han Dynasty      b. Tang Dynasty      c. Ming Dynasty
2. What was the name of this school?  
a. Apple Orchard      b. Pear Garden      c. Number One School of Drama
3. In 1790, opera groups from all over China came to the capital to celebrate whose birthday?  
a. Emperor Qianlong      b. Emperor Kangxi      c. the Emperor's son
4. How old was this person?  
a. 1 year      b. 65 years      c. 80 years      d. 100 years
5. Which famous Beijing Opera star introduced Beijing Opera to the world in 1919-1935?  
a. Bruce Lee      b. Shang Xiaoyun  
c. Hei Bao Gong      d. Mei Lanfang
6. This actor visited three countries: Japan, the United States, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. the Soviet Union      b. Korea  
c. France      d. England
7. What instrument was added to the opera in the 1920's to accompany this actor's high-pitched voice?  
a. erhu      b. jing erhu      c. sanxian      d. yueqin
8. The body of this instrument is covered on one end with what kind of material?  
a. bat wing      b. tiger fur      c. horse's hide      d. snake skin
9. What 1993 movie is about the lives of two Beijing Opera performers?  
a. An Lian Ni      b. Wu Ren He Cai  
c. Ba Wang Bie Ji      d. Xi Yan

10. Who wrote the novel that this film was based on?

a. “Lilian” Bihua Lee    b. Chi Ming Leung    c. Wang Shuo & Zhu Meng  
BONUS (3 points): Write the name of this film in English:

## B. Joy's Introductory Speech (林欢的开场白)

### Acrobatics and Beijing Opera (杂技和京剧)

Joy tells her tour group about the two performances they will be attending.

### Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

acrobat /'ækɹəbæt/ <i>n.</i>	performer who does acrobatics 杂技演员
acrobatics /,ækɹəʊ'bætɪks/ <i>n.</i>	skillful body movements that may involve jumping, spinning, flipping, and balancing 杂技
flexibility /,fleksə'bɪlətɪ/ <i>n.</i>	ability to bend and stretch one's body easily 灵活性
precision /prɪ'sɪʒən/ <i>n.</i>	the quality of exactness 准确(性)
century /'sentʃʊɹɪ/ <i>n.</i>	世纪
mime /maɪm/ <i>n.</i>	actor who performs without speaking 哑剧演员; 丑角
percussion /pə'kʌʃən/ <i>n.</i>	instrument that is played by being hit, such as a drum or gong 打击乐器
elaborate /ɪ'læbərət/ <i>adj.</i>	complex; highly detailed 详细的; 精细(巧)的
make-up /'meɪkʌp/ <i>n.</i>	anything put on the face—such as powder, lipstick, or paint—to change one's appearance 面具, 脸谱; 化装
project /'prɒdʒekt/ <i>v.</i>	to display in a larger form 投影
subtitle /'sʌb,tʌɪtl/ <i>n.</i>	words that show the translation of a video or performance 副标题; 字幕

“In the next few days we'll be attending two very special performances. Tonight we'll see the Shanghai Acrobatics, and on Wednesday we have tickets for the Beijing Opera. I'd like to take a few minutes to introduce you to these two popular art forms.

“First, Chinese acrobatics are known all over the world for their flexibility, strength, and precision. You're in for a treat, especially if this is your first time

seeing them. As each act builds in difficulty, you'll be asking yourself, "What else could they possibly do?" And then they'll do something that is even more incredible. You have to see it to believe it\* !

"Beijing Opera is also amazing, but in a different way. Although its roots go back to the 8th century, Beijing Opera as we know it today has only been around since the mid 19th century. Unlike Western operas, which are mostly singing, Beijing Opera involves a combination of singing, dialog, mime, and acrobatics, all accompanied by music played continuously on traditional string and percussion instruments. The actors wear elaborate costumes and heavy make-up. If you know what to look for, you'll be able to identify them by the colors of their clothes and face paint. The plays are based on famous myths and historical legends. Luckily, the theater where we are going projects English subtitles on a screen on one or both sides of the stage, so you'll be able to tell what's going on.

"I'm sure you will enjoy both performances. I'll give you a more detailed explanation before we go, and as always, let me know if you have any questions at any time."

( \* "You have to see it to believe it" : something seems impossible unless you see it yourself)

### C. Listening for the Main Idea (泛听)

Listen to Joy's speech carefully, and then answer the following questions.

1. Why does Joy say, "You have to see it to believe it"?

---

2. How will the tourists be able to understand the Beijing Opera?

---

### D. Filling in the Blanks (填空)

Now listen to Joy's speech again and fill in the blanks.

"In the next few days we'll be attending two very special performances. Tonight we'll see the Shanghai Acrobatics, and on Wednesday we have (1) \_\_\_\_\_ for the Beijing Opera. I'd like to take a few minutes to introduce you to these two popular art forms.

“First, Chinese acrobatics are known all over the world for their (2) \_\_\_\_\_, strength, and precision. You’re in for a (3) \_\_\_\_\_, especially if this is your first time seeing them. As each act (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in difficulty, you’ll be asking yourself, “What else could they possibly do?” And then they’ll do something that is even more incredible. You have to see it to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ it!

“Beijing Opera is also amazing, but in a different way. Although its (6) \_\_\_\_\_ go back to the 8th century, Beijing Opera as we know it today has only been around since the mid 19th century. Unlike Western operas, which are (7) \_\_\_\_\_ singing, Beijing Opera involves a combination of singing, dialog, (8) \_\_\_\_\_, and acrobatics, all accompanied by music played continuously on traditional (9) \_\_\_\_\_ and percussion instruments. The actors wear elaborate costumes and heavy (10) \_\_\_\_\_. If you know what to look for, you’ll be able to identify them by the colors of their clothes and face (11) \_\_\_\_\_. The plays are based on famous myths and historical (12) \_\_\_\_\_. Luckily, the theater where we are going projects English (13) \_\_\_\_\_ on one or both sides of the (14) \_\_\_\_\_, so you’ll be able to tell what’s going on.

“I’m sure you will enjoy both performances. I’ll give you a more (15) \_\_\_\_\_ explanation before we go, and as always, let me know if you have any questions at any time.”

### E. Listening for Details (精听)

Listen to Joy’s speech again and decide whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F). Then change the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_\_ Joy’s group will see the Shanghai acrobatics on Wednesday.
2. \_\_\_\_ Chinese acrobats can do unbelievable things that will amaze the tourists.
3. \_\_\_\_ Western opera and Beijing Opera are similar because they both have acrobatics.
4. \_\_\_\_ Beijing Opera performers wear elaborate costumes and heavy make-up.
5. \_\_\_\_ The audience can see subtitles in English.
6. \_\_\_\_ Joy says that the tourists will like the acrobatics more than the opera.
7. \_\_\_\_ Joy will explain more about Beijing Opera before the performance.

## Part II Conversation 1 (对话1): Chinese Acrobatics (中国杂技)

### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

circus /'sɜ:kəs/ <i>n.</i>	a group of people and animals that travel around to perform acrobatics and other skillful forms of entertainment 马戏团
clown /klaʊn/ <i>n.</i>	entertainer who usually has a humorously painted face 马戏团小丑
tightrope /'taɪtrəʊp/ <i>n.</i>	a rope tightly stretched across an open space high above the ground that acrobats walk and balance on (杂技走钢丝用的) 钢丝
trapeze /trə'pi:z/ <i>n.</i>	high swing on which acrobats perform 吊架; 高秋千
lion tamer	person who trains and performs with lions 训狮人
graceful /'ɡreɪsfʊl/ <i>adj.</i>	showing a pleasing beauty of form, movement or manner 优雅的; 优美的
goofy /'ɡu:fi/ <i>adj.</i>	silly; awkward 愚蠢的; 笨拙的
hoop /hu:p/ <i>n.</i>	large ring 铁环
somersault	roll with the body tucked in a ball 筋斗
/ˈsʌməsɔ:lt/ <i>n. /v.</i>	
contortionist	performer who bends her body in extreme and unusual ways 柔术
/kən'tɔ:ʃənɪst/ <i>n.</i>	

*The next day, Joy discusses the acrobatic performance with Natalie (age 14) and her brother Ryan (age 12).*

Joy: What do you think of the acrobatics last night?

Natalie: They were amazing. I've seen the circus before, but this was a lot better.

Ryan: Yeah, this was not like the circus at all.

Joy: Really? How was it different?

Natalie: Well, in the circus there are more clown acts than acrobatic acts. Usually there's a tightrope act and a trapeze act, but not many others.



- Ryan: And there are more trained animal acts. Usually there's a lion or tiger tamer and maybe some elephants or horses.
- Natalie: This reminded me of Cirque d'soleil\*. It's all human performances, and they are very artistic and graceful, not crazy and goofy like the circus.
- Joy: Ryan, which act did you like the best last night?
- Ryan: I liked the part where they were diving through hoops and doing somersaults.
- Natalie: That was so cool. Who would've thought there were so many different ways to jump through a hoop?
- Ryan: I like how they used their legs to catch and toss each other. I want to try that. It looked like fun.
- Joy: What about you, Natalie? What was your favorite act?
- Natalie: The most amazing thing for me was the girl who was balancing all those champagne glasses. She had them on her feet, hands, and forehead.
- Joy: Yes, it was really incredible how she could balance all those glasses while contorting her body.
- Natalie: It seemed like all the girls were contortionists. I'm pretty flexible, but those girls were practically folding themselves in half! How do they do that?
- Joy: I've heard that they start training when they are still very young—about 4 or 5 years old.
- Ryan: I'm going to start training as soon as I get home. I bet I could do that bike trick. Do you think I can balance ten people on my bike?
- Natalie: I don't think Mom and Dad will like that.
- Joy: Well, I'm glad you enjoyed the acrobatics.
- Ryan: If the opera is half as good, I'll be happy.

( \* Cirque d'soleil ( 太阳马戏团 ) is a famous European traveling acrobatic circus known for their graceful and artistic performances. )

### B. Comprehension ( 综合理解 )

Pair up with another student and answer the following questions about the previous conversation. Then, discuss your answers with the whole class.

1. Write down the question that Joy uses to start the conversation:

---

Is this a good conversation opener? Why or why not?

2. How does Joy keep the conversation going? What questions does she use?
- \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
  - \_\_\_\_\_
3. Joy doesn't need to ask as many questions later in the conversation. Pay attention to what she does instead. Match what she says with its function in the conversation.
- \_\_\_\_\_ "Yes, it was incredible ..."
- \_\_\_\_\_ "I've heard that they start training ..."
- \_\_\_\_\_ "Well, I'm glad you enjoyed the acrobatics."
- Answers a question.
  - Begins to close the conversation.
  - Agrees with the previous comment.
4. How does Joy signal the end of the conversation?

Why do you think Joy ended the conversation when she did?

### C. Speaking Activities (口语练习)

For the following activities, form groups of three.

- Practice the conversation with classmates. Take turns reading the three different parts.
- Discuss each question below. Is it a good question to use to open a conversation? Why or why not? If not, change it into a better conversation opener.

*Example:*

Do you like movies? *This is not a good conversation opener because it is a YES-NO question which can be answered with one word. A better opener would be:*  
What kind of movies do you like?

OR: Have you seen any good movies lately?

*NOTE: Even though the second question is a YES-NO question, it still promotes conversation because person B will probably start talking about the movies he/she has seen recently and whether they were any good.*

- Did you have fun last night?
- How do you like the tour so far?
- Did you go shopping?

- d. Do you have any pets?  
e. Are you hungry?
3. Now continue the conversation by thinking of one follow-up question to ask after each opener. Then practice these short conversations with your partners.

Example:

Opener: A: Have you seen any good movies lately?

B: Yeah. I saw the new Star Trek movie last week.

Follow-up: A: How did you like it?

B: I loved it! I was sitting on the edge of my seat the whole time!

### Part III Conversation 2 (对话2):

#### Introducing Beijing Opera (介绍京剧)

*Joy answers questions and explains the Beijing Opera.*

#### A. Vocabulary and Text (词汇与课文)

acquired taste	something a person can only learn to like with time 养成的习惯、爱好
high-pitched /'haɪ'pɪtʃt/ <i>adj.</i>	used to describe a sound with a high frequency 高调; 音调高的
gong /ɡɒŋ/ <i>n.</i>	hanging round metal piece that is hit with a stick to make a sound 锣
cymbal /'sɪmbəl/ <i>n.</i>	two round metal pieces that are hit together to make a sound 铙钹, 镲
get hooked on	become addicted to 上瘾
earplug /'iəplʌɡ/ <i>n.</i>	rubber or plastic pieces that are placed in the ears to mute sound 耳塞
I'm all ears.	I'm listening. 洗耳恭听
dignified /'dɪɡnɪfaɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	very serious and important 有威严的, 有品格的
adolescent /ˌædəʊ'lesənt/ <i>n.</i>	teenager; someone who is becoming an adult 青少年
ironically /aɪ'rɒnɪkəlɪ/ <i>adv.</i>	used to describe a situation which is the opposite of what one would expect 讽刺的
intimidating /ɪn'tɪmɪdeɪtɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	causing others to feel nervous or less confident 威胁的; 恐吓的

treacherous /'trefərəs/ *adj.*

courageous /kə'reɪdʒəs/ *adj.*

ferocious /fə'reʊfəs/ *adj.*

ambitious /æm'bɪʃəs/ *adj.*

scenery /'si:nəri/ *adj.*

symbolic /sɪm'bɒlɪk/ *adj.*

smudge /smʌdʒ/ *n.*

improvise /'ɪmprəvaɪz/ *v.*

deceitful; dangerous 危险的;叛逆的

brave 勇敢的

fierce 非常强烈的;猛烈的

determined to be successful; having big plans for oneself 雄心勃勃的;有抱负的;热情的

the background in a play 背景

representing something else 象征性的

dirty spot 污点;污迹

act without following a planned script 即兴发挥;即席(现场)创作

Joy: Tonight we are going to see the world-famous Beijing Opera. For most people, Beijing Opera is an acquired taste.

Mark: You can say that again. It's just a bunch of men in fancy costumes singing in high-pitched voices. When you add all the gongs and clanging cymbals, it gets really annoying.

Joy: That's why I need to give you some tips on what to look for. The more you understand it, the more you can appreciate it. Some Westerners even get hooked on it.

Mark: Not me. It gives me a headache!

Karen: Come on, Mark. We're in China, and we agreed to try everything, right? Wear earplugs if you have to.

Mark: Alright, I'll give it a go. Start explaining, Joy. I'm all ears.

Joy: Okay. First of all, there are four main roles in Beijing Opera. The main male role is called "Sheng". He could be an older dignified gentleman, such as an emperor, a younger adolescent with a high-pitched voice, or a military figure who is trained in acrobatics. The fancier his costume is, the higher his rank in society.

Karen: Do the different colors of the costumes mean anything?

Joy: Definitely. An emperor would wear a gold robe with elaborate embroidery. A high-ranking official would wear a purple or red robe, while a low-ranking official would wear blue. Young characters usually wear white. Older characters may wear white, but often wear brown or olive green.

- Mark: I heard that all the female roles are all played by men. Is that true?
- Joy: I was just getting to that. They used to be played by men, but now women also play these roles. The female role in Beijing Opera is called “Dan”. Ironically, some of the most famous Beijing Opera stars in the past have been male “Dan” performers.
- Karen: So besides the male and female roles, what else is there?
- Joy: The third main role is called “Jing”, the character who has a heavily painted face. His make-up is very important because the color tells the audience what kind of person he is.
- Mark: In American cowboy movies, the bad guys traditionally wear black.
- Joy: In Beijing Opera, black isn’t bad. It means a rough or intimidating character. A white face is much worse. White means treacherous, so beware of any character with a white face.
- Karen: What do some of the other colors mean?
- Joy: Red is courageous, so a character with a red-painted face is very brave. Blue means wild or ferocious. Yellow means ambitious or strong.
- Mark: Is there anything else you can tell us that will help us appreciate the performance more?
- Joy: You should know that the scenery is very minimal. Sometimes a single table and chair are moved around to represent different things, such as a bed, a wall, or even a mountain. A blue cloth could represent a river or the sea. An oar would represent a boat.
- Karen: I get it. The scenery is symbolic, so we have to use our imagination.
- Joy: That’s right. And the movements are symbolic, too. For example, if a character walks in a circle, that means he is going on a journey. You will notice that all the movements are sweeping and circular motions. Sharp angles are avoided.
- Mark: You never told us what the fourth role is.
- Joy: Oh, I almost forgot! The fourth role is called “Chou”. It’s the clown. He is a foolish but likable character. He wears just a smudge of face paint. Of all the actors, he is the one who gets to improvise the most.
- Mark: I don’t think I can remember all this. Can you make me a cheat sheet?
- Karen: Just sit next to me, Mark. I’ve been taking notes.

## B. Questions for Comprehension and Critical Thinking (综合理解和逻辑思考)

Pair up with another student and answer the following questions together. Then, discuss your answers with the whole class.

1. What does “acquired taste” mean? Think of three other things that can be considered an acquired taste.
2. Why does Mark think Beijing Opera is annoying? Do you agree with him?
3. How does Karen convince Mark to listen to Joy?
4. What are the four main roles in Beijing Opera? What special skills does a performer need for each one?
5. What do the different colors represent in Beijing Opera?
6. What is the scenery like in Beijing Opera?
7. Give several examples of symbolism in Beijing Opera.
8. Do you think Joy’s explanation will help her tour group enjoy the opera more? Why or why not?

## C. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

When learning vocabulary, in addition to learning definitions, it is important to know how the words are commonly used.

For each adjective below, write down the noun it describes in Conversation 2. Then write down two other nouns that it often describes. In the last column, write “person” if this adjective is normally used to describe people, or write “thing” if this adjective is normally used to describe objects. Try to identify what kind of thing if possible. If it can describe people or things, write “both”.

Hint: “Google” the word on the Internet to find words it commonly appears with.

The first two have been done as examples.

Adjective	Noun in Text	Other Noun 1	Other Noun 2	Person or Thing?
1. acquired	<i>taste</i>	<i>skills</i>	<i>property</i>	<i>thing</i>
2. high-pitched	<i>voices</i>	<i>scream</i>	<i>squeal</i>	<i>thing ( sound )</i>

3. fancy				
4. clanging				

续表

5. dignified				
6. military				
7. elaborate				
8. high-ranking				
9. intimidating				
10. treacherous	X			
11. courageous	X			
12. ferocious	X			
13. ambitious	X			
14. minimal				
15. symbolic				

## Part IV Intensive Reading (精读):

### Appreciating Traditional Performing Arts (传统表演艺术欣赏)

#### A. Vocabulary and Text (词汇与课文)

tumble /'tʌmbl/ v.	roll and flip 翻跟头
stack /stæk/ n.	a pile with each item directly on top of another 堆; 垛
feat /fi:t/ n.	impressive accomplishment requiring skill or strength 绝技
engage /ɪn'geɪdʒ/ in v.	participate in 参与, 参加; 从事
accompany /ə'kʌmpəni/ v.	go together with 陪同
scene change	a time between acts in a play when the background is changed to represent a new location as far as concerning 场景变换
troupe /tru:p/ n.	performing group 剧团; 戏班子
merge /mɜ:dʒ/ v.	join together; combine 合并
banner /'bænə(r)/ n.	long piece of cloth, often with words on it, that hangs from a pole or between two poles 旗帜; 横幅
harness /'hɑ:nɪs/ n.	leather straps used to control a horse 马具

No trip to China is complete without a performance of China's unique traditional performing arts. The two most famous are Chinese Acrobatics and Beijing Opera. Most tours include tickets to one or both of these events.

People all over the world are already familiar with Chinese acrobatics through their performances in many other countries. Tourists of all ages can appreciate the strength, flexibility and grace of the acrobats as they tumble through hoops, spin huge pots on their heads, do handstands on stacks of chairs, balance glasses, spin plates, juggle hats, and ride bicycles. They perform all kinds of incredible feats, each more breath-taking than the one before. Tourists immediately appreciate the amazing skills of these fantastic acrobats.

On the other hand, Beijing Opera is more of an acquired taste. Also known as "xiqu" or "theater of song", Beijing Opera involves much more than just singing. The skilled actors engage in mime, dance, dialog, poetry, and acrobatic movements. Unlike a musical, in which periods of drama are interrupted by song and dance, Peking Opera involves constant music. The orchestra is composed of traditional instruments including strings, percussion, and woodwinds. Percussion often accompanies the actors' speech and movement and also indicates scene changes. The strings accompany the actors' singing. Although many tourists have a general sense of what Beijing Opera is, a good tour guide should be able to offer a brief history and some guidelines as far as what to look for while viewing a performance.

The roots of Peking Opera go back to 740 A.D., when the Tang Emperor Ming Huang founded the Pear Garden, China's first dramatic school. Over the years many styles developed in various provinces. In 1790, dozens of troupes came to the capital to perform for Emperor Qianlong's 80th birthday. Over the next 50-60 years, performance and music styles from Anhui and Hubei merged with traditional opera, resulting in what is recognized today as Beijing Opera.

The content of the operas comes from popular myths and historical folktales. Many of the operas that are performed today were created during the "Golden Age" of Beijing Opera in the early 1900's. Also during this period, Beijing Opera gained a worldwide audience when Mei Lanfang, best known for his clear, high voice and portrayal of female roles, toured Japan (1919 and



1924), the United States (1930), and the Soviet Union (1935).

Beijing Opera relies heavily on conventions and symbolism. The scenery is mostly left to the imagination: waving banners represent high winds; a horse whip represents a horse. The colors and costumes worn by the performers help the audience identify them. Warriors can be distinguished from citizens by the flags connected to their shoulders and by long feathers attached to their hats. The four main roles are male (“Sheng”), female (“Dan”), painted face (“Jing”), and clown (“Chou”). Performers train long and hard to perfect their voice and movements.

*( Giving tourists a basic introduction before the performance will greatly enhance their enjoyment and enable them to develop a deeper appreciation for this unique art form. )*

### B. Writing Exercises (写作练习)

1. Think of a famous myth or legend or Beijing Opera story. How would you explain this story to someone who has never heard it before? Write a brief introduction and a summary of the story. Be sure to explain who the main characters are.
2. Choose two of the following topics to compare and contrast in a paragraph or short essay. What are the main similarities and differences?

Chinese acrobatics	Beijing Opera	cowboy movie (Western)
Western-style circus	Broadway musical	Western-style opera

### C. Class Discussion (班级讨论)

1. Conduct a class survey. Each student should ask three different classmates the following questions. Then make a chart on the board to summarize the results of his/her survey.
  - a. Have you ever seen a Beijing Opera performance? Which one(s)?
  - b. Have you studied Beijing Opera in school? In which grade(s)?
  - c. What do you like and dislike about Beijing Opera?
2. Do you think Beijing Opera is a dying art? Why or why not? What can parents, teachers, and/or the government do to help young people become more interested in traditional performing arts?

## Part V Reading Passage (泛读):

### Splendid China 2: Thousand Island Lake (锦绣中华 2: 千岛湖)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

located /ləʊ'keɪtɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	situated in a particular spot or place 位于……的
kilometer /'kɪlə'mɪtə/ <i>n.</i>	a unit for measuring distance, equal to 1,000 meters 千米;公里
famed /feɪmd/ <i>adj.</i>	known widely and well 著名的
greenery /'ɡri:nəri/ <i>n.</i>	attractive green leaves and plants 绿叶;绿枝
average /'ævərɪdʒ/ <i>adj.</i>	being about midway between extremes 平均的
basin /'beɪsən/ <i>n.</i>	area of land drained by a river 洼地;盆地
evacuate /ɪ'vækjuət/ <i>v.</i>	leave or withdraw from (a place) especially because of danger 撤离;疏散
make way for	为……让道;为……让路
reservoir /'rezəvɔ:(r)/ <i>n.</i>	natural or artificial lake used as a source or store of water 水库;蓄水池
hydroelectric power station	station that uses water-power to produce electricity 水力发电厂
dam /dæm/ <i>n.</i>	barrier built across a river to hold back the water and form a reservoir 水坝;水堤
drown /draʊn/ <i>v.</i>	die or be covered with water 使淹死;淹没
peak /pi:k/ <i>n.</i>	pointed top, especially of a mountain 尖顶;山峰
surface /'sɜ:fɪs/ <i>n.</i>	top of a body of liquid or the sea 水面;海面
vegetation /ˌvedʒɪ'teɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	plants in general 植物;草木
profitable /'prɒfɪtəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	bringing profit or advantage; beneficial 有利可图的;有益的
annual /'ænjuəl/ <i>adj.</i>	covering the period of a year; happening every year 每年的;年度的
preserve /prɪ'zɜ:v/ <i>v.</i>	keep safe from injury, harm, or destruction 保存;保藏
ecological /ˌekə'lɒdʒɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	connected with the way plants, animals, and people are related to each other and to their environment 生态的;生态学的

subtropical monsoon climate	climate typical of an area that is near a tropical area 亚热带季风性气候
distinct /dɪs'tɪŋkt/ <i>adj.</i>	easily seen, felt or understood 清楚的;明显的
moist /mɔɪst/ <i>adj.</i>	slightly wet 潮湿的;湿润的
temperature /'tempərɪtʃə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	degree of heat or cold (in a body, room, area, etc.) 温度;气温
centigrade /'sentɪgreɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	of or using a temperature scale with the freezing-point of water at 0 degree and the boiling-point at 100 degree 摄氏温度计的
relics /'reɪlɪks/ <i>n.</i>	an object or a place esteemed and venerated because of association with a memorable person or thing 遗迹;遗物
idyllic /aɪ'dɪlɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	pleasing or picturesque in natural simplicity 田园诗的
mineral water	water that comes out of the ground naturally and is considered healthy to drink 矿泉水
oxygen /'ɒksɪdʒən/ <i>n.</i>	a gas without color, taste or smell in the air 氧;氧气
unsophisticated /ʌnsə'fɪstɪkətɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	simple and natural; not having much knowledge or experience of modern and fashionable things 不世故的;纯真的
solar energy	energy from the sun that is converted into thermal or electrical energy 太阳能
liquefied gas	a mixture of hydrocarbon gases used as a fuel in heating appliances 液化气

Located 150 kilometers from Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province, is Qiandao (Thousand Island) Lake. Famed for its greenery, the lake is surrounded by the largest forest park in the country; it is one of China's most popular tourist destinations. The lake's average depth is 34 meters, and the water is clear to a depth of 7 to 12 meters.

Thousand Island Lake was once the Chun'an basin where old cities were located and 290,000 residents lived. In 1957, the residents were given two years to evacuate to make way for the construction of the Xin'an River reservoir

and hydroelectric power station. The dam project started on April 1, 1957, and began its operation on Sept 21, 1959. The residents have been relocated to nearby counties and provinces. During the flooding of the Chun'an basin, all the old cities disappeared beneath the rising water. The lake drowned smaller mountains, leaving only the peaks of some visible above the surface. Thousand Island Lake is actually a reservoir created by the hydroelectric power station dam on the Xin'an River. There are now 1078 islets inside Thousand Island Lake, which gives the lake its name.



Today, Thousand Island Lake is sometimes honored as Green Thousand Island Lake as 90% of the area is vegetation (forest coverage is 81%). 94 different kinds of fish and 90 different kinds of birds live in the surrounding area. The fishery business is profitable: The annual produce of fish is about 3,000 tons, which is

naturally raised. Meanwhile, the total fish breeding area can produce 900,000 tons per year. Needless to say, tourism here is profitable.

The area receives about 5 million tourists annually and it has been honored as one of the three best tourism areas in the mainland by Taiwanese travelers, besides the capital Beijing and the Three Gorges of the Yangtze River. The Thousand Island Lake is honored as "World's Garden City" and "China's Best Preserved Ecological Town". The climate is very pleasant. It features the subtropical monsoon climate. Therefore, it has four distinct seasons and is usually warm and moist. Its average annual temperature is 17 degrees centigrade. The average annual rainfall is 1,430 millimeters. Some of the famous scenic spots in the lake area are Longshan, Mishan. Other highlights include Ostrich Island, Peacock Garden, Monkey Island, Wenxin Island, Three-Pool Island, and Mei Park scenic area, to name a few. Because of the long history of Chun'an County, cultural relics and ancient architecture are plentiful.

It's also a pleasant place to live. One local tells of his idyllic lifestyle: "People here live in scenic houses, drink mineral water, eat fresh lake fish, and breathe pure oxygen." All the residents of Qiandao lake enjoy their simple, unsophisticated lifestyle. They use solar energy and liquefied gas

instead of polluting fuels, even in the buses and taxis. Director of the Qiandao Lake Administration Bureau Wang Chengshe says, “Qiandao lake had an early start as a tourist city, and is now one of the country’s top holiday destinations. Combining sightseeing tours, conferences and water sports, it has set a new trend of lake travel in China”.

### B. Questions for Reading Comprehension (阅读理解题)

1. What is Thousand Island Lake famous for?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. How was Thousand Island Lake created?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Why is the lake honored Green Thousand Island Lake?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What is the climate like in this area of Thousand Island Lake?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What has enabled Thousand Island Lake area to become rich in cultural relics and ancient architecture?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What makes Thousand Island Lake area a pleasant place to live?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Part VI Grammar Review (语法复习): Relative Clauses (定语从句)

### A. Grammar Explanations (语法解释)

A relative clause is a clause that modifies a noun or a pronoun. It describes, identifies or gives more information about them. A relative clause is introduced by a relative pronoun such as “who, whom, which, that, whose” or a relative adverb such as “when, where, why”. (对名词或代词进行描述、修饰或提供更详细信息的从句称为定语从句。定语从句由关系代词 who, whom, which, that, whose 或关系副词 when, where, why 引导。)

1. Relative pronouns “who, that, which, whose” used as the subject (关系代词 who, that, which, whose 作主语)

Simple Sentence (简单句)	Relative Clause (定语从句)
Fast-food restaurants are for people. <b>Those people</b> are always in a hurry. (快餐店是为人服务的。那些人总是匆匆忙忙。)	A. Fast-food restaurants are for people <u>who/that</u> are always in a hurry. (快餐店是为总是匆匆忙忙的人们服务的。)
Yesterday I visited the school. <b>It</b> stands near the river. (昨天我走访了那所学校。它坐落于河边。)	B. Yesterday I visited the school <u>that/which</u> stands near the river. (昨天我走访了坐落于河边的那所学校。)
I apologized to the woman. I spilled <b>her coffee</b> . (我向那位妇女道歉。我打翻了她的咖啡。)	C. I apologized to the woman <u>whose coffee I</u> spilled. (我向那位被我打翻了咖啡的妇女道歉。)
Please pass me the book. <b>Its cover</b> is green. (请递给我那本书。它的封面是绿色的。)	D. Please pass me the book <u>whose cover is</u> green. (请递给我那本封面是绿色的书。)

## Notes (注解)

- “Who or that” is used as the subject to refer to people, as in A. As a subject pronoun, “who” is used more commonly than “that”. (who 或 that 用于指人, 在从句中作主语如 A 句。作为主语的关系代词用于指人时, “who” 比 “that” 更常用。)
- “That or which” is used as the subject to refer to things, as in B. As a subject pronoun, “that” is used more often than “which”. (that 或 which 用于指事物, 在从句中作主语如 B 句。当作主语的关系代词用于指事物时, that 比 which 更常用。)
- When “who, which, or that” act as subject pronouns, they cannot be omitted from relative clauses. (当关系代词 who, which, or that 作定语从句的主语时, 不能省略。)
- Both “whose” and the noun it is connected to are placed at the beginning of the relative clause, as in C. and D. (whose 和它所修饰的名词都放在定语从句的句首如 C 和 D 句。)

2. Relative pronouns “who/whom, that, which” used as the object (关系代词 who/whom, that, which 作宾语)

Simple Sentence (简单句)	Relative Clause (定语从句)
The girl is from Paris. We met <b>her</b> at the airport. (这个女孩来自巴黎。我们在机场遇见了她。)	A. The girl <u>who/whom/that/ Ø</u> we met at the airport is from Paris. (我们在机场遇见的那个女孩来自巴黎。)

续表

Simple Sentence (简单句)	Relative Clause (定语从句)
The dress is very beautiful. I bought <u>it</u> at the First Department Store. (这条裙子很漂亮。我在第一百货商店买了它。)	B. The dress <u>that/which/∅</u> I bought at the First Department Store is very beautiful. (我在第一百货商店买的这条裙子很漂亮。)

## Notes (注解)

- As an object pronoun, “who” is often used instead of “whom”, especially in spoken English. “Whom” is usually used only in formal written English. (在从句中作宾语指人时, who 比 whom 更常用, 特别是在口语中, “whom” 通常只用于正式的书面语中。)
- An object pronoun is often omitted (∅ used as the symbol of omission) from a relative clause, as in A. and B. (关系代词在定语从句中作宾语时常可省略 (∅ 为省略符号) 如 A 和 B 句。)

The function of relative pronouns in the relative clause is given below. (关系代词在定语从句中的作用见下表:)

Relative Pronoun (关系代词)	Function (作用)
who (谁)	subject or object for people (作主语或宾语, 指人)
which (那个, 那些)	subject or object for animals and things (作主语或宾语, 指动物或事物) referring to a whole sentence (代表整个主句)
that (那个, 那些)	subject or object for people, animals and things (作主语或宾语, 指人、动物或事物)
whose (谁的)	possession for people, animals and things (表示“所有格”, 指人、动物或事物)
whom (谁)	object for people (作宾语, 指人)

3. Relative adverbs “where, when, why” used as the adverbial (关系副词 when, where, why 作状语)

Simple Sentence (简单句)	Relative Clause (定语从句)
The bus will wait for us at the front gate. We got off <u>at the front gate/there</u> . (巴士会在前门等我们。我们在前门下车。)	A. The bus will wait for us at the front gate <u>where</u> we got off. B. The bus will wait for us at the front gate <u>at which</u> we got off. C. The bus will wait for us at the front gate <u>which/that</u> we got off <u>at</u> . D. The bus will wait for us at the front gate <u>∅</u> we got off <u>at</u> . (巴士会在我们下车的前门等我们。)

续表

Simple Sentence (简单句)	Relative Clause (定语从句)
I will never forget the day. I visited the West Lake <u>on that day/then</u> . (我永远不会忘记那天。我在那天游览了西湖。)	E. I will never forget the day <u>when I visited the West Lake</u> . F. I will never forget the day <u>on which I visited the West Lake</u> . G. I will never forget the day <u>that I visited the West Lake</u> . H. I will never forget the day <u>Ø I visited the West Lake</u> . (我永远不会忘记游览西湖的那天。)
This is the reason. I like Hangzhou <u>for this reason</u> . (这就是原因。我因此喜欢杭州。)	I. This is the reason <u>why I like Hangzhou</u> . J. This is the reason <u>for which I like Hangzhou</u> . (这就是我喜欢杭州的原因。)

## Notes (注解)

- “Where” is used in a relative clause to modify a noun of place such as “house, street, city, place” and etc. as in A. (where 在定语从句中表示地点,其先行词往往是表示地点的名词,如 house, street, city, place 等如 A 句。)
- If “where” is used, no preposition is included in the relative clause, as in A. If “which or what” is used instead of “where”, the preposition must be used, as in B., C. and D. (定语从句若用了 where, 就不能用介词如 A 句。如果不用 where 而用 which 或 that, 就要用相应的介词如 B, C 和 D 句。)
- “When” is used in a relative clause to modify a noun of time such as “hour, day, month, year, time” and etc., as in E. (when 在定语从句中表示时间,其先行词往往是表示时间的名词,如 hour, day, month, year, time 等如 E 句。)
- If “when” is not used in a relative clause, a preposition is used before “which”, as in F. Otherwise the preposition is omitted, as in G. and H. (定语从句如不用 when, 可以用“介词 + which 来引导从句, 如 F 句。不然的话, 介词就省略如 G 和 H 句。)
- “Why” is used in a relative clause to modify reason, as in I. “Why” can be replaced by “for + which”, as in J. (why 在定语从句中表示原因如 I 句。也可以用 for + which 来替代 why 如 J 句。)

## 4. Preposition + relative pronoun (介词 + 关系词)



Simple Sentence (简单句)	Relative Clause (定语从句)
Joy is our guide. I told you <u>about her</u> . (乔伊是我们的导游。我告诉过你她的情况。)	<p>A. Joy is our guide <u>about whom I told you</u>.</p> <p>B. Joy is our guide <u>who/whom/that I told you about</u>.</p> <p>C. Joy is our guide <u>Ø I told you about</u>. (乔伊就是我告诉过你的我们的导游。)</p>
The concert was wonderful. We listened <u>to it</u> yesterday. (音乐会美妙绝伦。我们昨天欣赏了它。)	<p>D. The concert <u>to which we listened yesterday</u> was wonderful.</p> <p>E. The concert <u>which/that we listened to yesterday</u> was wonderful.</p> <p>F. The concert <u>Ø we listened to yesterday</u> was wonderful. (我们昨天欣赏的音乐会美妙绝伦。)</p>
<p>In our group there are 20 foreign tourists. <u>Most of them</u> are from Japan. (我们团队里有20个外国游客。他们中的大多数来自日本。)</p> <p>At the party John sang two songs. <u>Both of them</u> were in English. (在派对上约翰唱了两首歌。它们都是英语歌。)</p> <p>The doctors' discussion was about Jim. <u>One of his problems</u> was heart disease. (医生们讨论了吉姆的情况。他的问题之一是心脏病。)</p>	<p>G. In our group there are 20 foreign tourists, <u>most of whom</u> are from Japan. (我们团队里有20个外国游客,他们中的大多数来自日本。)</p> <p>H. At the party John sang two songs, <u>both of which</u> were in English. (在派对上约翰唱了两首歌,它们都是英语歌。)</p> <p>I. The doctors' discussion was about Jim, <u>one of whose problems</u> was heart disease. (医生们讨论了吉姆的情况,他的问题之一是心脏病。)</p>

### Notes (注解)

- In formal written English, a preposition comes before a relative pronoun. In that case, only “whom” instead of “who” or “that” is used to modify people and only “which” instead of “that” is used to modify things. “Whom” and “which” after a preposition can't be omitted, as in A. and D. (在正式书面语中我们通常用“介词+关系代词”结构,修饰人时用“介词+whom”而不用“介词+who或that”,修饰事物时用“介词+which”而不用“介词+that”。放在介词后面的关系代词whom和which不能省略如A和D句。)
- In informal spoken English, we usually place a preposition at the end of the clause and we can either keep or omit the relative pronoun, as in B., C., E. and F. (在非正式口语中,介词通常放在从句的末尾,关系代词可以保留或省略如B, C, E和F句。)

- A relative clause can be introduced by “an expression of quantity + preposition + relative pronoun”, as in G., H. and I. Commonly used expressions of quantity are: some of, many of, much of, each of, both of, neither of, all of, none of, the majority of, and etc. (定语从句可以由“数量词 + 介词 + 关系代词”引出如 G, H 和 I 句。常用的数量词有:some of, many of, much of, each of, both of, neither of, all of, none of, the majority of 等。)
  - When the expression of quantity is before the relative pronoun, only “whom, which or whose” is used in the clause, as in G., H. and I. It is usually used in formal written English. (由“数量词 + 介词 + 关系代词”引出的定语从句只能用“whom, which 或 whose”关系代词,如 G, H 和 I 句。通常用于正式书面语中。)
5. Restrictive relative clause and non-restrictive relative clause (限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句)

Restrictive Relative Clause, No Comma (限制性定语从句)	Non-Restrictive Relative Clause, with Comma (非限制性定语从句)
I gave the information to the man who was standing at the counter. (我把材料交给了站在那个角落的男人。)	A. I gave the information to Mr. Jones, who was standing at the counter. (我把材料交给了琼斯,他站在那个角落里。)
One holiday that American children love is October 31st. (美国孩子喜爱的一个节日是10月31日。)	B. Halloween, which American children love, is October 31st. (美国孩子喜爱的万圣节是10月31日。)

### Notes (注解)

- Most relative clauses do not use commas because the relative clause identifies or restricts the meaning of the noun it modifies. In this case, the relative clause is essential to the meaning of the sentence. (This is called a “restrictive relative clause.”) However, if the relative clause is only adding extra information that does not identify or restrict the meaning of the noun it modifies, then commas must be used. (This is called a “non-restrictive relative clause”.) (大多数定语从句不用逗号将其与主语分开,它们对先行词起限制的作用,是先行词意思不可缺少的部分。此类定语从句被称作“限制性定语从句”。然而,如果定语从句只是对先行词作一些附加说明,不起限定制约作用,常用逗号将其与主句分开。此类定语从句被称作“非限制性定语”。)

- “That” cannot be used in non-restrictive relative clauses. (非限制性定语从句不能用 that。)
  - Relative clauses following proper nouns almost always require commas because the noun is already identified and the clause is merely adding extra information as in Sentence A and B. (先行词为专用名词时,定语从句通常用逗号与主句分开,因为该名词已经是确定的,定语从句只是作一些附加说明,如 A 句和 B 句。)
6. “Which” can be used to modify a whole sentence (关系代词 which 用来修饰整个主句的内容)

Simple Sentence(简单句)	Relative Clause(定语从句)
It's getting late and the plane has not arrived yet. <b>This</b> worries me. (很晚了飞机还没有到达。这使我烦恼。)	A. It's getting late and the plane has not arrived yet, <b>which</b> worries me. (很晚了飞机还没有到达,这使我烦恼。)
The elevator is out of order. <b>This</b> is too bad. (电梯出了问题。这太糟糕了。)	B. The elevator is out of order, <b>which</b> is too bad. (电梯出了问题,这太糟糕了。)

### Notes (注解)

- When a relative pronoun is used to modify the idea of the whole sentence instead of a noun, only “which” can be used, as in A. and B. A comma is used to separate the relative clause from the main sentence. (如果关系代词代表的是整个主句的内容,而不是修饰某一个名词,关系代词只能用 which。通常用逗号将定语从句与主句分开。)

### B. Grammar Exercises (语法练习)

1. Choose the correct answer or answers to complete the following sentences.

- (1) The Thames is a river \_\_\_\_\_ runs through London.  
a. that            b. where            c. which            d. Ø
- (2) A ferry is a ship \_\_\_\_\_ carries people across the water.  
a. it            b. that            c. which            d. Ø
- (3) An airport is a place \_\_\_\_\_ aircraft can take off and land.  
a. at that            b. at which            c. where            d. at where
- (4) Actual flying time is the total time \_\_\_\_\_ is spent in the air.  
a. when            b. that            c. which            d. Ø

- (5) A guide is a person \_\_\_\_\_ shows tourists around a place.  
a. who      b. whom      c. that      d. Ø
- (6) Christmas is the time \_\_\_\_\_ most people go on holiday.  
a. when      b. during when      c. during which      d. which
- (7) An itinerary is a plan or list of the places \_\_\_\_\_ you will visit on a journey.  
a. where      b. that      c. which      d. Ø
- (8) A travel agency is a business \_\_\_\_\_ sells travel related products and services to customers.  
a. that      b. which      c. where      d. who
- (9) Excess baggage is luggage \_\_\_\_\_ exceeds an airline's weight limit and is liable to an extra charge.  
a. that      b. it      c. which      d. Ø
- (10) A layover is the time \_\_\_\_\_ you have to wait at an airport for your connecting flight.  
a. which      b. when      c. during that      d. why
- (11) A museum is a building \_\_\_\_\_ important cultural, historical objects are kept and shown to the public.  
a. in which      b. in that      c. where      d. in where
- (12) A package tour is one \_\_\_\_\_ includes air, hotel and often food.  
a. that      b. who      c. what      d. Ø

2. Combine the sentences, using the second one as a relative clause.

Example:

We visited San Francisco and Los Angeles. They are two big cities in western America.

→ We visited San Francisco and Los Angeles, which are two big cities in western America.

- (1) Can you think of one place? Does it have a special memory for you?

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (2) Egypt is a place. Anyone would like to visit it for a vacation.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (3) You know the reason? Why do so many people in the world learn English?

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (4) 25 December is the day. Children get their Christmas presents on that day.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (5) He managed to survive in the desert for three weeks without food. It was

amazing.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (6) The best way to prevent traveler's diarrhea is to be very careful of food. You eat the food while traveling.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (7) Last night the orchestra played three symphonies. One was Beethoven's seventh Symphony.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (8) Speaker's corner is a corner of Hyde Park. Anybody can get up on a soapbox and say what they want to say there.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (9) Does the hotel room have a safe? We can leave our valuable things there.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (10) Having some basic emergency medical knowledge helps not only yourself but also other people. You travel with those people.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (11) The family is very wealthy. Their house is located on top of the hill.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (12) The hotel has a small store on the ground floor. There, you may buy items such as camera film, toiletries, a simple clothes, and snacks.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

3. Circle YES if the relative pronoun can be omitted and circle NO if it can't be omitted.

- (1) YES NO Lucy, who I haven't seen for ages, rang me last night.  
(2) YES NO I cannot forget the Beijing Opera which we saw last night.  
(3) YES NO A smile is a goodwill gesture that is recognized the world over.  
(4) YES NO Samuel Johnson said the person who is tired of London is tired of life.  
(5) YES NO Please give me the name of the people with whom you'll be traveling.  
(6) YES NO Tourists seek unique and novel items which represent the area which they visit.  
(7) YES NO The hotel has a restaurant that stays open 24 hours and is ready to serve meals anytime.  
(8) YES NO For those who would like to use a computer, this hotel has an

internet café on the first floor.

- (9) YES NO A guide is the first friend in a foreign country who the tourists rely on for guidance, advice, and help.
- (10) YES NO It is possible to climb a section of the Great Wall and enjoy a splendid view that you will remember for the rest of your life.
- (11) YES NO For many years, Hawaii has been a magic name to people who like to travel.
- (12) YES NO This room is too dark. Do you have any rooms that are brighter?
4. Read the text and then complete the sentences by adding a suitable pronoun or adverb according to the text.

### San Francisco

The area had long been inhabited by native Americans, the Ohlone ( meaning “people of the west” ) before the first Spanish immigrants came to settle in this part of the country. After the Mexican-American War, the small town became American territory, and when the California gold rush started in 1848, the population increased enormously. Nowadays San Francisco is famous especially for its cable car and the Golden Gate Bridge.

The Golden Gate Bridge connects the city of San Francisco and San Francisco Peninsula. It spans the Golden Gate, a strait between the Pacific Ocean and the San Francisco Bay — that’s where the name Golden Gate Bridge comes from.

Constructions on the bridge began in 1933 and were completed in 1937. The bridge rises 60m above the water. With its total length of 1970 meters it was the longest suspension bridge in the world until 1964. The bridge is part of the United States Highway 101. It has six lanes and a footpath on each side.

- (1) San Francisco was inhabited by the Ohlone, \_\_\_\_\_ were a native American tribe.
- (2) The Ohlone had lived in the area for a long time before the Spanish immigrants \_\_\_\_\_ came to settle there.
- (3) The population increased quickly in 1848 \_\_\_\_\_ the California gold rush started.
- (4) San Francisco is a place \_\_\_\_\_ is famous especially for its cable car and the Golden Gate Bridge.
- (5) There is a bridge \_\_\_\_\_ connects San Francisco and San Francisco Peninsula.
- (6) There is a strait called Golden Gate \_\_\_\_\_ gave the famous bridge its

name.

- (7) 1933 was the year in \_\_\_\_\_ the construction of the bridge started.
- (8) 1937 was the year \_\_\_\_\_ the construction of the bridge was completed.
- (9) The Golden Gate Bridge, the total length of \_\_\_\_\_ was 1970 meters, was the longest suspension bridge in the world until 1964.
- (10) The bridge is used by people \_\_\_\_\_ drive on the United States Highway 101.
- (11) The bridge is part of the United States Highway 101, \_\_\_\_\_ has six lanes and a footpath on each side.

## Part VII Unit Review Exercises (单元综合练习)

### A. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

1. Cross out the word or phrase in each box that is different from the others. Explain why that word or phrase doesn't belong. Work alone first. Then compare your answers with a partner or small group.

Example:

Japan	England	"Japan" doesn't belong because all the others are European countries.
France	Germany	

(1) graceful artistic goofy elaborate	(2) myth legend report tale	(3) trapeze feather hoop tightrope	(4) difficulty precision flexibility strength
(5) spin juggle accompany balance	(6) incredible fantastic annoying amazing	(7) drum gong cymbal earplug	(8) identify appreciate merge recognize

续表

(9) ambitious treacherous brave courageous	(10) instrument percussion strings woodwinds	(11) tumble sing dive jump	(12) contortionist acrobat lion tamer tour guide
--	--	--	--

2. Prepositions are very idiomatic in English, so when you study a verb, pay attention to which prepositions are used with it and whether or not the combination has a special meaning. Choose prepositions from the box below to complete the sentences. Some prepositions are used more than once.

around    from    on    at    in    to    for    of    by    with

- (1) The story is based \_\_\_\_\_ a novel that has been \_\_\_\_\_ since the early 1800's.
- (2) If I introduce you \_\_\_\_\_ Beijing Opera, you might get hooked \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- (3) You'll have a better appreciation \_\_\_\_\_ Beijing Opera if you know what's going \_\_\_\_\_.
- (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the other hand, if you don't know what to look \_\_\_\_\_, you might not be able to distinguish one character \_\_\_\_\_ another.
- (5) You are in \_\_\_\_\_ a treat because these actors are known \_\_\_\_\_ their acrobatic skills.
- (6) Natalie's experience with gymnastics resulted \_\_\_\_\_ a greater appreciation \_\_\_\_\_ the flexibility demonstrated \_\_\_\_\_ the contortionists.
- (7) We have become very attached \_\_\_\_\_ Joy because we know we can rely \_\_\_\_\_ her to take care \_\_\_\_\_ our needs.

### B. Dictation (听写)

First, listen to the entire paragraph to understand the main ideas. Then, listen to each sentence carefully and write down exactly what you hear on a separate piece of paper. Finally, listen to the whole paragraph one more time to check your sentences.

### C. Sentence combination (句子组合)

1. Rewrite the sentence by adding the adjective clauses (in parentheses) in the right places. Add commas if necessary.
  - (1) The actor is a military leader.



( who has flags connected to his shoulders )

---

(2) The subtitles help tourists understand the story.

( that don't speak Chinese )

( which are projected on a screen )

---

(3) Beijing Opera is different from Western opera.

( which involves only singing and acting )

( which includes singing , mime , and acrobatics )

---

(4) The body of the jinghu and the body of the jing erhu are both covered on one end with snake skin.

( which is made of wood )

( which is made of bamboo )

---

2. Combine the sentences by changing the second sentence into an adjective clause that modifies a noun in the first sentence. Add commas if necessary.

(1) The man was amazing. He could spin a huge pot on his forehead.

---

(2) The Pear Garden was the first dramatic school in China. It was founded in 740 A. D.

---

(3) The lead female role was played by a man. He sang and talked with a high-pitched voice.

---

(4) These notes will help you remember what the colors mean. I took these notes while Joy was talking.

---

#### D. Translation ( 翻译 )

1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.

(1) It is possible to watch Chinese acrobats perform on the Internet.

---

(2) How did the contortionists become so flexible?

---

(3) Even for Chinese people , Beijing Opera is an acquired taste.

---

(4) Is it true that in the past even the female roles were played by male actors?

(5) Walking in a circle, which represents going on a journey, is one example of symbolic movement.

2. Translate the following sentences into English.

(1) 我们要去的那个剧院会在屏幕上打出英文字幕。

(2) 如果你懂得门道,你可以根据演员的服装和化妆认出演员。

(3) 京剧中,脸上涂了白色的人物常常被刻画成奸诈小人。

(4) 京剧中,丑角最擅长做即兴表演。

(5) 关于京剧你懂得越多,你就越能欣赏它。

# Unit 3

## Traditional Sports and Recreation ( 传统运动和娱乐 )

In this unit, Joy discusses the popularity of ballroom dancing, tai chi, and other recreational pastimes in China. Joy and her tour group compare exercise and recreation in China and the Western world.

## Part I Introduction (介绍):

### Getting Started (入门练习)

#### A. Warm-up Exercises

1. The world is full of dancing! Where did each of the following dances originate? Write the letter of the place of origin next to the dance name.

Further research: Look up the origin of ballet and the foxtrot on the Internet.

Dance	Place of Origin
(1) _____ Samba	A. Spain
(2) _____ Belly dancing	B. United States
(3) _____ Waltz	C. Argentina
(4) _____ Quickstep	D. Middle East
(5) _____ Tango	E. Hawaii
(6) _____ Swing	F. Germany
(7) _____ Paso doble	G. Britain
(8) _____ Rumba	H. Cuba
(9) _____ hula	I. Brazil

2. There are many traditional sports that come from various ethnic groups in Asia. Which ones do you know? Write the letter of the ethnic group on the line next to the sport with which it is associated.

Sport	Ethnicity
1. _____ karate	A. Korean
2. _____ see-saw	B. Chinese
3. _____ tai chi	C. Mongolian
4. _____ wrestling	D. Kazaks, Khalkhas, Tajiks
5. _____ sheep snatching	E. Japanese

#### B. Joy's Introductory Speech (林欢的开场白)

*Joy and the group are on their way to the Temple of Heaven. Joy gets the group ready for*

*the walk from Tiananmen Square north to the Temple of Heaven through Tian Tan Park.*

### **Vocabulary & Text** (词汇和课文)

significant /sɪɡ'nɪfɪkənt/ <i>n.</i>	important, considerable 重要的
ground /graʊnd/ <i>n.</i>	always used in plural form; an physical area of land for a specific sport or activity; the land or garden area around a building 操场
pair off	get into two's 结对
show off	say or do things that get attention or to draw attention to sth. 卖弄;炫耀
origin /'ɒrɪdʒɪn/ <i>n.</i>	the place where sth. begins 起源;开端
avid /'ævɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	enthusiastic, extremely interested 渴望的
bourgeois /'buːʒwɑː/ <i>adj.</i>	of or related to the middle class and interest in possessions and social class 资产阶级的;中产阶级的
decadent /'dekədənt/ <i>adj.</i>	low morals, more concerned with pleasure than serious matters 颓废的
revival /rɪ'vaɪvəl/ <i>n.</i>	the process of bringing sth. back into existence 复原(兴);再生
accustomed /ə'kʌstəmd/ <i>adj.</i>	be comfortable with sth., be used to sth. 习惯于
posture /'pɒstʃə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	the physical position of the body 姿势
efficient /ɪ'fɪʃənt/ <i>adj.</i>	working well without wasting time, resources, or effort 有效率的
boost /buːst/ <i>v. /n.</i>	improve in a positive direction, increase the strength or value of sth. 促进
stamina /'stæmɪnə/ <i>n.</i>	the ability to last, having sustained energy and strength 毅力;持久力
agility /ə'dʒɪlətɪ/ <i>n.</i>	the ability of moving quickly and easily 轻快;敏捷
sharpen /'ʃɑːpən/ <i>v.</i>	improve, perfect 改进
reflex /'rɪːfleks/ <i>n.</i>	physical reaction or response 反应;反射
hacky sack	a game in which a small bag filled with sand or small rocks is juggled with the feet 沙袋球

“This morning, we will visit the Temple of Heaven, which is one of the most famous and significant temples in China. Since the Temple of Heaven

and the park grounds are so large, approximately 2.7 square kilometers (a little more than one square miles), we will have a long walk of about 20 minutes to the area of the Temple structures. When we arrive at the Temple, the site tour guide will tell you everything about it and its place in ancient ceremonies related to good harvests. The Temple structures are actually surrounded by a park called Tian Tan Park. Like all parks in China, Tian Tan is a very popular park for exercising.

“Most Western tourists are surprised to see large groups of people exercising in a park, but what surprises them the most is to see ballroom dancing in a park. Yes, you may see our senior citizens paired off and dancing to a loud waltz coming from a CD player close by. They are very happy and proud to show off their best steps in the waltz, quickstep, chacha, or foxtrot as they practice, exercise, and socialize to the sounds of beautiful music.

“Interestingly, ballroom dancing, with its origins in Britain and Europe, was quite popular in China starting from the 1930s. After the People’s Republic of China was founded in 1949, ballroom dancing continued its popularity, especially in big cities such as Shanghai. Even China’s supreme leaders, Mao Zedong and Zhou Enlai, were avid ballroom dancers. However, after the Cultural Revolution in the 1960s, such dancing, along with other recreational activities, were labeled as ‘bourgeois and decadent’. Nonetheless, ballroom dancing had a country-wide revival in late 1970s and continues to be popular today, especially with seniors and college educated citizens.

“You will also witness seniors practicing tai chi in the park, which is perhaps a more familiar form of exercise to everyone. Again, however, most tourists are not accustomed to seeing people practicing martial arts in such a public place. In China, tai chi is almost always practiced outdoors at dawn, and ideally near trees. tai chi started some 3,000 years ago as a combat martial art. Correct posture and efficient movement were encouraged in order to better protect oneself and hit the rival more effectively. In the last 2,000 years, it has focused more on breathing, balance and smoothness in movement. Today, it is considered to be more of an ‘internal’ or ‘soft art’ in the martial arts. Therefore, many people who practice tai chi find that it boosts their energy, stamina, and agility, sharpens their reflexes, and gives them an overall sense of well-being.

“Finally, you might be amused and even astounded by the skill of some of our seniors playing hacky sack or tossing a frisbee. Our seniors are truly

dedicated to keeping in shape, both physically and mentally!”

### C. Listening for the Main Idea (泛听)

1. Where is the park area that the tourists will walk through? What is it called?
2. What activities in the park will the tourists probably see?
3. What does Joy think the tourists' reaction will be?
4. Why is tai chi a popular exercise?

### D. Filling in the Blanks (填空)

Now listen to Joy's speech again and fill in the blanks.

“This morning, we will visit the Temple of Heaven, which is one of the most famous and (1) \_\_\_\_\_ temples in China. Since the Temple of Heaven and the park (2) \_\_\_\_\_ are so large, approximately 2.7 square kilometers (a little more than one square miles), we will have a long walk of about 20 minutes to the area of the Temple structures. When we arrive at the Temple, the site tour guide will tell you everything about it and its place in ancient (3) \_\_\_\_\_ related to good harvests. The Temple structures are actually (4) \_\_\_\_\_ by a park called Tian Tan Park. Like all parks in China, Tian Tan is a very popular park for exercising.

“Most Western tourists are surprised to see large groups of people exercising in a park, but what surprises them the most is to see ballroom dancing in a park. Yes, you may see our senior (5) \_\_\_\_\_ paired off and dancing to a loud waltz coming from a CD player close by. They are very happy and proud to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ their best steps in the waltz, quickstep, chacha, or foxtrot as they practice, exercise, and socialize to the sounds of beautiful music.

“Interestingly, ballroom dancing, with its origins in Britain and Europe, was quite popular in China starting from the 1930s. After the People's Republic of China was founded in 1949, ballroom dancing continued its (7) \_\_\_\_\_, especially in big cities such as Shanghai. Even China's supreme leaders, Mao Zedong and Zhou Enlai, were (8) \_\_\_\_\_ ballroom dancers. However, after the 'Cultural Revolution' in late 1960s, such dancing, along with other (9) \_\_\_\_\_ activities, were labeled as 'bourgeois and decadent'. Nonetheless, ballroom dancing had a country-wide (10) \_\_\_\_\_ in late 1970s and continues to be popular today, especially with seniors and college educated citizens.

“You will also witness seniors practicing tai chi in the park, which is perhaps a more (11) \_\_\_\_\_ form of exercise to everyone. Again, however, most tourists are not accustomed to seeing people practicing martial arts in such a

(12) \_\_\_\_\_ place. In China, tai chi is almost always practiced outdoors at (13) \_\_\_\_\_, and ideally near trees. tai chi started some 3,000 years ago as a combat martial art. Correct posture and efficient movement were encouraged in order to better protect oneself and hit the rival more (14) \_\_\_\_\_. In the last 2,000 years, it has focused more on breathing, balance and smoothness in movement. Today, it is considered to be more of an ‘internal’ or ‘soft art’ in the martial arts. Therefore, many people who practice tai chi find that it (15) \_\_\_\_\_ their energy, stamina, and agility, sharpens their reflexes, and gives them an overall sense of well-being.

“Finally, you might be amused and even astounded by the skill of some of our seniors playing hacky sack or tossing a frisbee. Our seniors are truly dedicated to keeping in shape, both physically and mentally!”

#### E. Listening for Details (精听)

1. Approximately how big are the Temple grounds and park area?
2. What dances are mentioned?
3. When was ballroom dancing first popularized in China?
4. When and why was ballroom dancing prohibited?
5. When did it become popular again?
6. What is the difference between the ancient tai chi and the more recent form?

## Part II Conversation I (对话 1):

### In the Park (在公园里)

#### A. Vocabulary and Text (词汇与课文)

impressive /ɪmˈpresɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	remarkable, giving a positive feeling 给人深刻印象的, 令人难忘(感动)的
killing me	an expression used to show that sth. is hurting the speaker a lot (俚语) “真要命”
age range	an age group defined by a bottom and an upper limit of age 年龄段(组)
mandatory /ˈmændətərɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	no choice, obligatory 命令的; 强制的
outlawed /ˈaʊtlɔ:d/ <i>adj.</i>	illegal 非法的



age discrimination	prohibiting someone from participating in certain activities because of the belief that the person's age is not appropriate to the activity 年龄歧视
marked field	painted or chalked lines in an area outside so that people can play a sport 室外运动场地
younger set	a generation of young adults, usually ranging from teenagers to age 30 十几岁到30岁左右的年轻人

*After the Temple of Heaven tour, the group has lunch in a local restaurant. Joy, Amanda, Rick, and Susan sit together for lunch and discuss the morning activities and sights.*

- Joy: What did you think about the Temple of Heaven?
- Amanda: It was HUGE! Very impressive!
- Rick: Huge is right! My feet are killing me from all that walking!
- Mike: Joy, you were right about the park. It was so interesting to watch so many people exercising in so many different ways!
- Joy: Yes, the park was very busy this morning.
- Amanda: You told us they were “seniors” but a lot of those people didn't look very old.
- Rick: Yeah, a lot looked younger than I, and I'm a “young” 63!
- Joy: Well, the age range of the seniors in the park could be from 55 to 80, or older.
- Mike: Fifty-five? Don't they have to work?
- Joy: In China, we have mandatory retirement. Although there are a few exceptions, women retire at 55 and men at 60.
- Amanda: Aha! That explains it. Mandatory retirement was outlawed in the U.S. several years ago. It's considered to be “age discrimination”.
- Rick: I'm not sure if that was a good or bad decision! Those seniors in the park looked pretty happy!
- Joy: When do most Americans retire?
- Mike: It depends. I would say the average age is 65. But sometimes people work well into their 70s or even 80s! They work as long as they can do the job, and want to do the job!
- Joy: Wow, that's interesting. So when Americans retire, what do they

do for recreation? Do they exercise in the park like we do?

Amanda: Not exactly. I think the idea of public and private activities is different, and so is the purpose of a park.

Rick: In the U. S., parks are primarily used for large gatherings, such as parties or sporting events.

Amanda: And sometimes families that live in apartments will go to a park for a picnic.

Mike: People do use parks for individual exercise ... but not like here in China.

Joy: Then what do you mean by “individual exercise”?

Amanda: I mean something like walking, or jogging, or maybe rollerblading or riding a bike. Or it could be practicing football or soccer with a friend.

Mike: You might see a volleyball game or maybe a football or softball game. In other words, parks seem to be for any sport that requires a fairly large marked field.

Rick: But I can assure you, you won't see any ballroom dancing or tai chi in a park in the U. S.!

Mike: Yeah, I think Americans feel like those are more “indoor” activities along with yoga or gymnastics. Most seniors take classes in a community center, or they might join a walking group.

Amanda: Or play golf or maybe tennis, like my mom.

Mike: You'll never see American seniors embarrass themselves trying hacky sack\*! That's for the younger set!

Rick: Interesting! Even our ideas of “inside” and “outside” recreation and what is “age appropriate” depend on our culture.

Joy: I think I'm learning more than I'm teaching!

Rick: I'm curious about what other exercises or sports are popular ...

Amanda: What does the younger set enjoy doing for recreation in China?

Mike: Are some sports considered only for women or only for men?

Joy: Wow! Those are all good questions, but our lunch time is over! Let me try to answer some of those questions on the way to our next tour site.

( \* Hacky Sack refers to a sport game played with a small round footbag filled with plastic beads or sand. The classic hacky sack circle consists of two or more players that keep the footbag off the ground without using their hands. The idea

of the game is similar to traditional Chinese game of kicking Jianzi [踢毽子].)

### B. Comprehension (综合理解)

1. What does Rick think about the ages of the seniors at the park?
2. Why does Susan ask the question “Don’t they have to work?”
3. What is meant by “individual exercises”?
4. What activities or sports are commonly seen in American parks?
5. Why wouldn’t you see an older American playing hacky sack?

### C. Speaking Activities (口语练习)

For the following speaking activities, form groups of four.

1. Practice the conversation with classmates. Try to use some of your own vocabulary to express the same ideas.
2. Are there sports in China that only men or only women play? Has this changed in recent years? If so, what has changed and why? Discuss this topic with your group and then report your ideas to the class.
3. Write a conversation using Joy, Rick, Susan, and Amanda. You must have each person speak at least twice. Be creative! Then, present your conversation to the rest of the class.

#### The situation:

The group takes a short walk after breakfast through a nearby park. Joy and Amanda try to convince Rick and Susan to join a group of seniors who are ballroom dancing in the park.

#### The Characters:

**Joy** is the tour guide for the group during the entire tour. She is a native of Beijing and she is good at getting her guests involved in local activities.

**Rick** is 63 years old. He went dancing occasionally when he was younger. He is comfortable around people he knows, but he’s a little shy among strangers.

**Susan** is Rick’s wife. She is a few years younger than Rick. She loves to dance, but hasn’t been dancing for a while. She’s not sure she remembers how to waltz. She is also a little shy but loves to try new experiences.

**Amanda** is the daughter of Susan’s co-worker. She has known Rick and Susan for a long time. She thinks it’s fun to try new things. She loves to dance, too, but doesn’t know any of the classic dances such as the waltz. She’s also an avid (热心的) photographer.

**The Conversation :**

**Susan:** Look. There's another group of senior dancers. They look like they are having such a good time!

---



---



---



---

**Part III Conversation 2 ( 对话 2 ) :****In Our Spare Time ( 我们的业余时间 )****A. Vocabulary and Text ( 词汇与课文 )**

viewing audience	people who watch television programs or movies 观众
compete /kəm'pi:t/ v.	try to win something in a contest 竞争
competition /kəm'pi:tʃən/ n.	a contest in which a winner can be determined 比赛; 竞争
restrict /rɪ'strɪkt/ v.	limit 限制
inspiring /ɪn'spaɪərɪŋ/ adj.	sth. that makes sb. feel interested and enthusiastic 鼓励; 激励
top-ranked /'tɒp'ræŋkt/ adj.	at the top of a list, often in a competition 一流的; 顶尖的
croquet /'krəʊkeɪ/ n.	a game played by hitting wooden balls through metal wickets with wooden clubs. 槌球

*Rick, Susan, Amanda and Joy had an interesting conversation about exercise and recreation at lunch today. On the way to the Summer Palace, they continued their conversation about traditional sports and recreation in China.*

**Joy:** Amanda, you wanted to know what the younger set enjoys doing, right?

**Amanda:** Yes, I'm guessing they aren't as interested in ballroom dancing as your seniors.

- Joy: Actually, ballroom dancing classes are being offered in some schools and many of our younger students are interested in learning this long-time favorite of China.
- Mike: Well, now that you mention it, there seems to be a revival of those classic dances in the U. S., too. There are two dance competition shows on TV that have a huge viewing audience. The contestants dance such dances as the rumba, tango, waltz, and swing. Most of the competitors are under 30.
- Joy: The younger generation is also very interested in other kinds of dancing including hip-hop, and what is sometimes called “street dancing”.
- Mark: Are there dance clubs?
- Joy: Discos are becoming increasingly popular in China and are very much enjoyed by young men and women.
- John: O.K. What about other exercise? Are there any popular sports in China?
- Oscar: I can think of one. I’ve seen some Chinese play table tennis on TV. Incredible!
- Amanda: And in college we had some Chinese international students who took a badminton class with me. I think they gave lessons to the teacher!
- Joy: Yes, those “small ball sports” are popular in China. We are especially well known for our ability in table tennis.
- Nick: Don’t forget swimming and diving!
- Meg: And ice skating!
- Nick: But what about the “all American” sports, baseball and basketball?
- Joy: The Chinese actually love baseball and we are getting well known, especially our youngsters, who have competed several times in the Little League World Series.
- Oscar: Not to mention Yao Ming in basketball! He’s awesome!
- Meg: Joy, I didn’t see as many women doing tai chi in the park. Are there sports restricted to men or women?
- Joy: Not so much anymore. Actually, tai chi has become very popular with our senior women. It’s inspiring to see them practice tai chi movements with fans and even swords. I think we just missed

them this morning.

Oscar: What about kung fu, or tae kwon do\*?

Joy: In the older generation, it is more common for only men to do combat martial arts, and even some team sports. But these days, we see women taking up many sports that were traditionally considered only men's sports.

John: China's women's soccer\*\* team is amazing!

Amanda: Yes, they are! We watched them play against the U. S. in the Women's World Cup final in 2002. It was an exciting game!

John: And we watched Zheng Jie at Wimbledon on TV. She is among the top-ranked women tennis players in the world!

Joy: That reminds me. I have an interesting photograph of a painting I want you all to look at. As you pass it around, notice who the players are. Then try to guess what game they are playing.

(Joy passes the photograph around. After a few minutes, the discussion continues.)

Amanda: Well, it's all women, and it looks like a pretty old painting.

Meg: Were they playing croquet?

Joy: No, it isn't croquet.

Mark: Could it be golf?

Joy: Good guess, Mark. These wealthy women are playing Chui Wan (捶丸), which means "strike pellet." It is possibly the beginning of modern golf. This game was first called bu da (步打球) meaning "walk and hit."

Mark: What? No electric golf carts? (laughs)

Joy: (laughing) Not then, Mark. This painting comes from the Song Dynasty.

Mark: Oh. That would be a lot of centuries ago, right?

Joy: The Song Dynasty existed between the Tenth and Twelfth Centuries.

Oscar: But I thought golf came from Scotland.

Joy: The first painting of what looks like golf in Europe comes from the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries.

Amanda: Well, unless someone finds a painting with a dinosaur holding a golf club, I guess this is another "first" for China.

(everybody laughs)



- ( \* Tae kwon do is a martial art and the national sport of South Korea. 跆拳道是一种源自韩国的使用拳脚进行格斗、对抗的运动项目。)
- ( \*\* 美国人称足球为 soccer, 橄榄球为 American football。)

### B. Questions for Comprehension and Critical Thinking (综合理解和逻辑思考)

1. Why might someone want to continue working after retirement age?
2. What team sports are becoming more international? Why do you think this is the case?
3. What has Joy learned about recreation, sports, and exercise from the group?
4. Why does Susan think classic dancing is having a revival in the United States?
5. Write three sentences about each of the tourists in Conversation 2. Think about their ages, their likes and their interests based on what they say and ask in the conversation. Your sentences should use modals of possibility such as could, must, or might. For example, "Mark must like to dance."

### C. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

1. Match these two word phrases to their correct definitions. Write the letter of the definition in front of the phrase.

PHRASE	DEFINITION
(1) pair off	A. an expression one uses to indicate something hurts a lot
(2) show off	B. to arrange people in two's
(3) "killing me"	C. prohibiting someone from participating in certain activities because of his/her age
(4) age range	D. reference to an age group less than middle age, approximately 16-30
(5) age discrimination	E. a grass or dirt area that has lines to indicate playing areas for a certain sport, e. g. a baseball field.

续表

PHRASE	DEFINITION
(6) age appropriate	F. the concept of an activity being suitable or right for a certain age
(7) marked field	G. people who watch TV programs or movies
(8) younger set	H. an age group defined by a bottom and an upper limit of age
(9) viewing audience	I. to display one's ability so that people will admire the person

2. Fill in the blank spaces with the appropriate part of speech. The X's indicate that the form does not exist, or it is rarely used.

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE	ADVERB
origin			
	revive	X	
	sharpen	X	
mandate			X
	X	agile	X
	restrict		
		inspirational	X
			competitively
		X	efficiently

3. Answer the following questions. Notice/Study how the new vocabulary items learned in the unit are used in the sentences.
- (1) What sports are most Americans accustomed to seeing in a park?
  - (2) What is a less efficient way to send a note to someone in another country, by mail or by electronic mail?
  - (3) What could you say to someone to boost his/her confidence in his/her cooking ability?
  - (4) What foods or drinks might decrease your stamina?
  - (5) What takes more agility, jogging or basketball? Why do you think so?
  - (6) "He seems a lot sharper since he quit smoking." What does that mean?
  - (7) What requires quicker reflexes, croquet, tennis, or swimming? Explain.
  - (8) What courses are mandatory in the last year of high school in China?



- (9) For the following sports, circle the ones that require a marked field and underline the ones that require a court. (If the sport requires neither, do nothing. )

golf	soccer	tennis	baseball	football
tai chi	basketball	volleyball	hacky sack	table tennis

## Part IV Intensive Reading (精读):

### China's Unique Sports (中国独特的运动)

#### A. Vocabulary and Text (词汇和课文)

trace back	look in the past for the origin of sth. 追根寻源
evolve /ɪˈvɒlv/ v.	grow from sth.; develop and change 发展; 展开
debut /ˈderbjʊː/ v. /n.	the first time sth. is seen 首演; 初次
meditation	think deeply in silence 沉思; 冥想
/ˌmedɪˈteɪʃən/ n.	
stick figure	representation of a person or animal only with use of lines 线条人物画
hook /hʊk/ v./n.	use a curved object to catch and pull something 钩子
tassel /ˈtæsəl/ n.	a bunch of threads tied at one end and attached to something as a decoration 流苏
retrieve /rɪˈtriːv/ v.	bring sth. back 找(挽)回; 收复
pose /pəʊz/ v. /n.	get into a physical position or posture 摆姿势
horizontal /ˌhɒrɪˈzɒntəl/ adj.	in a line from left to right, opposite of vertical 水平的; 地平线的
trampoline /ˈtræmpəliːn/ n.	a piece of canvas attached by cords to a frame several feet above the floor used by acrobats or gymnasts to bounce high and do tricks 蹦床
embroidered /ɪmˈbrɔɪdəd/ adj.	decorated with ornamental needlework 刺绣的
chant /tʃɑːnt/ v.	recite repeatedly in a rhythmic way 吟诵
formalized /ˈfɔːməlaɪzd/ adj.	rule governed, official 正式的; 成章的; 定型的
court /kɔːt/ v.	engage in activities to attract a partner to establish a romantic relationship 追求

China has a rich history of traditional sports and recreational activities. Because of China's more than 5,000 year history and the variety of ethnic influences, there is a rich diversity of fascinating sports. Some can be traced back to ancient times while others are practiced among minority groups in various parts of China. With the exception of a few activities such as "throwing embroidered ball" of the Zhuangs and "seesaw jumping" of the Koreans, most traditional sports of the minorities are for men only.

Hardly anyone thinks of martial arts without thinking of China. The origin of Chinese martial arts is *wushu*, which dates back to the Xia Dynasty more than 4,000 years ago. *Wu* means military, and *shu* means art, thus the "art of fighting" or martial arts. *Wushu*, like many sports, has continued to evolve, adding more advanced moves. The martial arts featured in the film *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon* are regarded as forms of *wushu*. *Wushu* debuted as an Olympic sport in the 2008 Olympics in Beijing, but no medals were awarded. *Kung fu* is considered a branch of *wushu*, but has strong Buddhist and Taoist influences. The trademark of *kung fu* is the tiger-crane combination or walking stance followed by a straight punch ending with a twist.

Tai chi is practiced by millions of Chinese in one form or another. This martial art form has been influenced by Taoism and Confucianism and is considered an "internal" or "soft art." It is primarily practiced today to improve health through harmonious movements and meditation. The motions often associated with this branch have been seen in stick figure drawings found in tombs over 2,000 years old.

Another popular world-wide game of "tug-of-war" can also be traced back to ancient China, around 2,400 years ago. The concept of "tugging" was originally used in naval battles. Naval soldiers would hook enemy boats trying to retreat and pull them back in defeat. Centuries later it became a popular contest resembling modern day tug-of-wars. It was even listed as an event in the 1900-1920 Olympics.



China has 55 minority ethnic groups in addition to the majority Han people, and the minority people have their own unique forms of sports and games. In the Inner Mongolian region in the north of China, the tradition of wrestling is a very important part of the Mongolian culture dating back hundreds of years. It is a highlighted competition in their annual Naadam celebration, along

with archery and horse racing. The wrestlers wear bright red and blue traditional wrestling costumes and high boots. There are no separate weight classes and no time limits. If either wrestler's knee or elbow touches the ground, he is the loser.

Moving towards the region of Tibet, you will encounter the thrilling sport of “yak racing.” Usually held in summer, it is an exciting and colorful event. Every yak is “dressed” with red tassels on its head, colorful silk on its horns, ribbons on its ears, and fan-shaped Tibetan patterns on the tail. Both the winning yak and rider receive great honor, with the winning yak getting special treatment from his master.



“Climbing a ladder of knives” is a traditional sport game of the Miao in Guizhou province. This game originates from a myth in which the hero retrieved dew from the moon by climbing a knife ladder. Today, the game is held three times a year to worship ancestors or gods. The ladder of knives consists of a post in which knives are inserted horizontally to form a ladder of blades. After all the fathers bless the wooden post of the ladder of knives, the chosen performer climbs the ladder to the top. On the way up, the young man will pose and dance. When he arrives at the top, he takes a horn out of his waist and blows it. Climbing the ladder of knives represents the ability of the Miao people to face danger and deal with difficulties directly.



The Koreans of Jilin Province bring the popular and incredible sport of “see-saw jumping,” which is a sport dominated by women. The game is usually held on especially joyous holidays such as the Lantern Festival, the Dragon Boat Festival, and the Mid-Autumn Festival. In the game, two people stand on both ends and take turns jumping up, much like a trampoline. With each jump, each person tries to reach higher and higher and do some skillful movements at the same time.



The traditional game of “throwing embroidered balls” is popular among the Zhuangs in Guangxi Region of China. It predates the Song Dynasty and has its roots in the throwing of weapons in war or hunting. However, in the Song



Dynasty, it was used to express love between youth during important festivals. The youth would invite each other to the edge of the village, field, or river bank, and divide into male and female sides. In alternating chants, they would ask each other questions and throw the embroidered balls. The chants included questions and answers regarding interests, values, and feelings. As the singing reached a climatic point, the girls would swing the balls in their hands and throw them to the boys of interest. The boys would catch the balls and throw them back. After a few times, the boys would tie a special small gift to the ball and throw it back to signify the beginning of dating. This ancient ritual has developed into a much more formalized competition in the Guangxi Region which solely focuses on the throwing skill rather than anything related to “courting”.

From being called the “sick man of Asia” at the beginning of the last century to hosting the 2008 Beijing Olympic Games, the Chinese people have witnessed amazing changes in their motherland. Today, with the fast development of the economy, the living conditions in China have improved fundamentally, and more and more Chinese are getting involved in exercising and sports. More than ever before, traditional sports and games as well as new and “imported” sports are gaining popularity across generations among the 1.3 billion people.

#### B. Class Discussion( 班级讨论)

1. Is competition healthy? Discuss how competition can be a positive experience, and how it can be a negative experience. What are ways to make competition a good experience for children?
2. Why is it important to maintain traditional minority sports such as yak racing or see-saw?
3. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of mandatory retirement. What are some reasons that people might want to continue to work beyond the usual retirement age? Besides a salary, what benefits does work have for people? What are the benefits of retirement?

#### C. Writing Exercises( 写作练习)

1. Write a paragraph that summarizes the difference in the American and Chinese concept of a park.
2. Write a short composition about a competition or contest in which you have participated.

3. Using the ideas from the Class Discussion on retirement, write a two-paragraph essay about retirement. The first paragraph should discuss the reasons people want to retire. The second should discuss the reasons people might want to continue working beyond the usual retirement age.

## Part V Reading Passage (泛读):

### Splendid China 3: West Lake (锦绣中华3:西湖)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

ripping water	stretch of rough water in a river or the sea 激流; 激浪
shimmer /'ʃɪmə/ v.	shine with a soft light that seems to waver 发闪烁的微光
misty /'mɪstɪ/ adj.	marked by mist; not clear or bright as a result of mist 有薄雾的; 朦胧的
shroud /fraʊd/ v.	cover or guard 罩; 覆盖
deck out	decorate 装饰
alluring /ə'ljʊəriŋ/ adj.	very attractive 诱惑的; 迷人的
compose /kəm'pəʊz/ v.	write (music, etc.) 创作(乐曲等)
dynasty /'dɪnəstɪ/ n.	series of rulers all belonging to the same family 朝代; 王朝
sentiment /'sentɪmənt/ n.	tender feelings 感情; 情绪; 多愁善感
inspire /ɪn'spaɪə(r)/ v.	give somebody new ideas or feelings 赋予某人灵感
shallow /'ʃæləʊ/ adj.	not deep 浅的
inlet /'ɪnlet/ n.	strip of water extending into the land from the sea or a lake 湾; 水湾
deposit /dɪ'pɒzɪt/ v.	cause (mud, clay, etc.) to settle 使(淤泥等)沉积
bound /baʊnd/ v.	form the boundary of (something); limit 形成(某事物)的界线; 限制
It is small wonder that ...	It is not surprising that ...; It is expected that ... 不足 为奇; 难怪
imperial /ɪm'prɪəriəl/ adj.	of an empire 帝国的; 帝王的
retreat /rɪ'tri:t/ n.	place suitable for privacy or seclusion 静居处; 隐居处
scale /skeɪl/ n.	relative size, extent 规模; 范围
serene /sɪ'reɪn/ adj.	calm and peaceful; tranquil 平静的; 宁静的

foliage /'fəʊliɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i>	(all the) leaves of a tree or plant 植物的叶子
enhance /ɪn'hɑːns/ <i>v.</i>	increase (the good qualities); make (somebody/something) look better 提高; 美化
fascinating /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	extremely interesting or charming 迷人的; 有极大吸引力的; 引人入胜的
enclose /ɪn'kləʊz/ <i>v.</i>	put a wall, fence, etc. round (something) 用墙、篱笆等围住
lantern /'læntən/ <i>n.</i>	light for use outdoors in a transparent case 灯笼; 提灯
jut out	extend out or project in space 伸出
reflection /rɪ'flekʃən/ <i>n.</i>	a thing reflected, especially an image in a mirror, still water, etc. 映象; 倒影
magical /'mædʒɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	very enjoyable, exciting or romantic, in a strange or special way 有魔力的; 神奇的
vista /'vɪstə/ <i>n.</i>	a view from a distance, especially a beautiful view from a high place 远景
monument /'mɒnjumənt/ <i>n.</i>	building, column, statue, etc. built to remind people of a famous person or event 纪念馆; 纪念碑
legend /'ledʒənd/ <i>n.</i>	story handed down from the past 传奇; 传说
holy /'həʊli/ <i>adj.</i>	associated with God or with religion; morally and spiritually pure 神圣的; 圣洁的
Buddhist /'bʊdɪst/ <i>n.</i>	a person whose religion is Buddhism 佛教徒
patriot /'pætriət/ <i>n.</i>	a person who loves his or her country and is eager to defend it 爱国者
murder /'mɜːdə/ <i>v.</i>	kill unlawfully and intentionally 谋杀
prime minister	the person who is the head of a state 丞相; 首相
enthrall /ɪn'θrɔːl/ <i>v.</i>	make someone very interested and excited 迷惑; 迷住
overlook /ˌəʊvə'lʊk/ <i>v.</i>	have or give a view from above 俯瞰; 俯视
pagoda /pə'ɡəʊdə/ <i>n.</i>	religious building or a tall tower with several stories each of which has its own overhanging roof 塔; 宝塔
code /kəʊd/ <i>n.</i>	set of laws or rules arranged in a system 法典; 法律
luxuriant /lʌg'zjuəriənt/ <i>adj.</i>	growing thickly and strongly 繁密的; 茂盛的
tranquil /'træŋkwɪl/ <i>adj.</i>	calm, quiet and undisturbed 平静的; 安宁的

“Ripping water shimmering on sunny day ,  
Misty mountains shrouded the rain ;  
Plain or gaily decked out like Xizi ;  
West Lake is always alluring. ”

These are the words composed by the famous Song Dynasty poet Su Dongpo when he compared West Lake to Xizi, the most beautiful woman in ancient China. These poetic sentiments leave no one in doubt of the glorious scenery that inspired him.



West Lake was originally a shallow sea inlet, and due to the laying down of mud, clay and small rocks deposited by a river, this 5.68 square kilometers of water became the famous West Lake. The average depth is just five feet, and the lake has five sections. The largest part is known as the Outer Lake and it is bounded by the North Inner Lake, Yue Lake, West Inner Lake and Lesser South Lake. Surrounded by hilly peaks on three sides, this water wonderland has been an attraction for centuries and it is small wonder that it was a favorite imperial retreat. The lake and its surroundings have all the elements of a traditional Chinese garden but on a grand scale. The natural setting of strangely shaped peaks, serene forests and springs, dense foliage and many blossoms are enhanced by the surrounding sculptures and architectural features. Whatever the season, the scenery is pleasing to the eye. The shades of light and weather present an ever-changing picture that is fascinating.

There are special places that visitors can enjoy: To the south of centre of the Outer Lake is a man-made island that encloses four small lakes. From here one can view the Three Pools Mirroring the Moon, when at night candles are lit in stone lanterns jutting out of the water thus creating the impression of the reflections of three moons. The scene is truly magical on the night of the Autumn Moon Festival. Solitary Hill Island lies between the Outer Lake and the north Inner Lake and is an ideal spot from which to admire the vista. The nearby Two Peaks Embracing the Sky is another impressive sight, especially when crossing the lake by boat.

Next to the lake are many monuments that have interesting stories and legends connected to them. There is the Lingyin Temple in its woodland setting, which is near Fei Lai Feng (Peak Flown From Afar). The legend says that this peak flew from India where it had formed part of a holy mountain. This is of

particular interest to Buddhists and those who have love of sculpture and art. The Mausoleum of General Yue Fei is a monument to the patriot who was murdered in 1141 at the command of his enemy Qin Hui, the Song prime minister.

Another sight to be found in this area is the Qiantang River, which has enthralled people for centuries. Overlooking the river stands the 13 story high Six Harmonies Pagoda. Dating from 970 A. D. and built on the site of an earlier pagoda that served as a lighthouse, the name refers to the six codes of Buddhism. A climb to the top of the pagoda carries the reward of an impressive view over the river. Sites like these in and around the lake, and the green luxuriant scenery reveal a tranquil beauty to those fortunate enough to visit West Lake.

### B. Questions for Reading Comprehension ( 阅读理解题 )

1. What comparison did the famous Song Dynasty poet Su Dongpo make of West Lake?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. According to the passage, what is the early history of West Lake?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. In what way is West Lake like a traditional Chinese garden?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Where and when is the most ideal spot to view the Three Pools Mirroring the Moon?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Briefly describe some of the legends connected with the Lingyin Temple and Fei Lai Feng.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Why is the Six Harmonies Pagoda of interest?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Part VI Grammar Review ( 语法复习 ) : Adverbial Clauses ( 1 ) ( 状语从句 1 )

### A. Grammar Explanations ( 语法解释 )

Basically, adverbial clauses describe the main clause of a sentence by telling when, why, where, how, or under what condition, and, etc. Adverbial clauses can be divided into nine categories: adverbial clause of time, place, reason, contrast/



concession, manner, comparison, purpose, result and condition. When an adverbial clause precedes the main clause, a comma is used to separate the clauses. When the adverbial clause follows, usually no comma is used. (状语从句通常回答主句有关“何时、为什么、在哪里、如何和在什么条件下”等问题。状语从句按其含义可分为时间、地点、原因、让步、方式、比较、目的、结果、条件九种类型。如果状语从句在先,主句在后,需用逗号将从句和主句分开。如果状语从句在后,则不用逗号。)

### 1. Adverbial clause of time (时间状语从句)

An adverbial clause of time indicates the time the action in the main clause takes place. The table below is a list of words commonly used to introduce adverbial clause of time. (时间状语说明主句谓语动词发生的时间。下表列举了引导时间状语的常用连词。)

after 在……以后	before 在……之前
when 在……时候	whenever 在任何……时候
while 在……期间;与……同时	as 在……期间
since 自从……以来	until/till 到……为止
once 一旦……就……	as soon as 一……就……
every time 每次	by the time 到……时候为止
no sooner...than 一……就……	hardly/scarcely...when 刚……就

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
when	A. Bring me the check <u>when you return</u> with our food. (当你上菜时把账单也带来。)
before	B. She (had) left <u>before I telephoned</u> . (在我打电话前她就离开了。)
until	C. Mary will have two more weeks in China <u>until she goes</u> back home. (玛丽回家前还要在中国逗留两周。)
as soon as	D. As soon as John <u>arrives</u> , we will go to the beach. (约翰一到,我们就出发去海滩。)
since	E. I <u>have played</u> tennis <u>since I was</u> a young boy. (当我还是个小男孩时就开始打网球。)
while	F. We plan to do some sightseeing <u>while we are</u> in Chicago. (我们打算在芝加哥时去观光。)
as	G. As I <u>was writing</u> a letter, she began packing. (我写信时她开始收拾行李。)
by the time	H. By the time he finished buying his souvenirs, we <u>had waited</u> for more than an hour. (等他买完礼物时,我们已等了一个多小时。)

续表

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
every time	I. We take a hike <u>every time we go</u> to the mountains. (我们每次进山,都会去爬山。)
whenever	J. <u>Whenever he comes to visit us</u> , we go to China Town to have dinner. (他每次来看望我们,我们都去“中国城”吃饭。)
hardly/scarcely ... when	K. John <u>had hardly</u> run out of the house <u>when the building collapsed</u> . (约翰刚跑出家门,大楼就倒塌了。)
no sooner...than	L. Tom <u>had no sooner</u> started his vacation than he got a call from his office telling him there was an emergency. (汤姆刚开始度假就接到办公室来电,告诉他有紧急情况。)

## Notes (注解)

- Notice the different tenses used in adverbial clauses of time. No future tense is used in adverbial clauses of time. They take either the simple present or the simple past tense, as in A., B., C., and D. (注意时间状语从句的时态问题。在时间状语从句中,通常不用一般将来时,而用一般现在时或一般过去时如 A, B, C 和 D 句。)
- “Since” means “from that time”. With “since” we use the present perfect tense in the main clause and the simple past tense in the adverbial clause of time, as in E. (since 意为“自从……以来”,主句通常用现在完成时,时间状语从句用一般过去时如 E 句。)
- “While” and “as” in the adverbial clause of time mean “during that time”. It is usually used with the continuous tense because it indicates an action in progress. (while 和 as 引导的时间状语从句意为“在……期间;与……同时”,通常用进行时表示某一动作正在进行如 G 句。)
- “By the time” expresses the idea that one event has been completed before another. Therefore the past perfect tense is used for past event in the main clause, as in H. (by the time 表示某一事件在另一事件之前已完成,所以主句多用过去完成时如 H 句。)
- “Whenever” and “every time” mean “each time something happens”. We use the simple present or the simple past tense because they express habitual actions, as in I. and J. (whenever 和 every time 意为“无论何时,每次”,表示习惯动作,因此通常用一般现在时或一般过去时如 I 和 J 句。)
- “Hardly/Scarcely...when” and “no sooner...than” have the meaning of “as soon

as...” We use the past perfect tense in the main clause and the past tense in the adverbial clause, as in K. and L. (hardly/scarcely...when 和 no sooner...than 都意为“一……就……”，在该结构中，前半句中的动词需用过去完成时，后半句用一般过去时如 K 和 L 句。)

## 2. Adverbial clause of place (地点状语从句)

Adverbial clause of place indicates the place about which the verb talks. We can introduce adverbial clauses of place with the following words “where, wherever, anywhere, everywhere” and etc. (地点状语从句描述事件发生的地点，通常由 where, wherever, anywhere, everywhere 等连词引导。)

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
where (在……的地方)	The church was built <u>where</u> there had once been a Roman temple. (教堂建在曾经是一所罗马神庙的地方。)
wherever (无论什么地方)	With a special train ticket you can travel <u>wherever you like</u> in Europe for just over £100. (一张专用火车票可以让你只花一百多英镑走遍欧洲各地。)
anywhere (任何地方)	You can't camp <u>anywhere you like</u> these days. (在这段日子里你不可以随意在任何地方宿营。)
everywhere (各个地方)	<u>Everywhere he goes</u> , he is warmly welcomed. (他到哪里都受到热烈欢迎。)

## Notes (注解)

- “Where” generally refers to a definite but unspecified place. (where 通常指一个特定的但未标明的地方。)
- “Wherever/anywhere/everywhere” suggest any place, not a definite place. (wherever /anywhere/everywhere 泛指任何一个地方。)

## 3. Adverbial clause of reason (原因状语从句)

Adverbial clause of reason explains the reasons for what happens in the main clause. We often give reasons by using words like “because, as, since, now that” and etc. (原因状语从句解答主句中所发生事件的原因。引导原因状语的常用连词有 because, as, since, now that 等。)

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
because (因为)	I didn't go because I was afraid. (我没去,因为我害怕。)
as (因为, 由于)	As we will be here for the next two days, you can leave your belongings in your room. (由于我们要在这里住两天,你们可以把东西留在自己的房间。)
since (由于, 既然)	Since the weather is so bad, we have to delay our trip. (由于天气很糟,我们只能推迟旅游。)
now that (既然)	Do you want to go for a walk now that the rain has stopped? (既然雨已经停了,你想去散步吗?)

### Notes (注解)

- “Because” is often used in the second half of the sentence to emphasize a reason that is most likely unknown to the speaker. (because 引导的原因状语从句通常放在句子的后半部分,强调讲话人所不知的原因。)
- We often begin sentences with “as” and “since” and they usually express a known cause. (as 或 since 引导的原因状语从句通常放在句子的前半部分,表示一个显而易见的或已为人知的原因。)
- “Since” can be used both as adverb of time meaning “after a certain time” and as an adverb of reason with the meaning of “because”. (since 既可用于引导时间状语从句意为“自从”,又可用于引导原因状语从句意为“既然,因为”。)

Since I last saw him, he has changed a lot. (= after a certain time)

自从我上次见到他以来,他有了很大的变化。

Since the Temple of Heaven is so large, we will have a long walk. (= because)  
由于天坛太大,我们得走很多路。

#### 4. Adverbial clause of contrast/concession (让步状语从句)

This clause is used to contrast with the main clause. It is often introduced by the following words: though/although, even if/though, while/whereas, however + adj./adv., whatever, no matter + question word, adj./adv. + as/though and etc. (让步状语从句表示“尽管,即使”转折的意思。常用的连词有: though/although, even though/if, while/whereas, however + 形容词/副词, whatever, no matter + 疑问词, 形容词/副词 + as/though 等。)

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
although/though (虽然, 尽管)	A. <u>Although/Though</u> this dress is beautiful, it is ( <u>yet/still</u> ) too expensive for me. (虽然这条裙子很漂亮,但对我来说太贵了。)
even if/though (即使, 纵然)	B. We intend to go to Hainan <u>even if/though</u> air fares will go up again <u>during the holiday</u> . (尽管假期中机票费会上涨,我们还是打算去海南。)
while (虽然, 尽管)	C. <u>While</u> I don't agree with what you say, I understand your reasons for saying it. (尽管我不同意你所说的话,我能理解你这样说的原因。)
whereas (而, 尽管)	D. <u>Whereas</u> you have traveled throughout the world, I have never been abroad. (你已经周游了世界,而我却还没有出过国。)
question word + ever (无论……)	E. <u>Whatever</u> I say, I seem to say the wrong thing. (无论我说什么,似乎都是错的。)
no matter + question word (无论……)	F. <u>However</u> far it is, I am going to drive there tonight. (无论有多远,我打算今晚开车去。)
	G. <u>No matter what</u> I say, I seem to say the wrong thing. (无论我说什么,似乎都是错的。)
	H. <u>No matter how</u> far it is, I am going to drive there tonight. (无论有多远,我打算今晚开车去。)
adj./adv. + as (虽然……)	I. <u>Much as</u> I'd like to help, there isn't much I can do. (虽然我很想帮忙,却做不了什么。)
whether...or/or not (不管……还是)	J. You'll have to attend the meeting <u>whether you're free or busy</u> . (不管你忙还是不忙,你都得参加这个典礼。)
	K. <u>Whether you agree or not</u> , I'll take that trip. (无论你是否同意,我都会去旅游。)

### Notes (注解)

- “Although” and “though” are used to introduce adverbial clause of contrast. They can be used together with “yet” or “still” but not with “but”, as in A. (由 although 或 though 引导的让步状语从句表示“虽然,尽管”之意,可与 yet 或 still 连用,但不能与 but 连用如 A 句。)
- “While” and “whereas” are used to show direct contrast. “Whereas” mostly occurs in formal written English. “While” is also used in adverb clause of time meaning “during the time that...”. (while 和 whereas 都用来引导让步状语从句,意为“尽管”,“而”,但是 whereas 更多用于较正式的书面语。while 还可用

来引导时间状语从句,意为“在……期间”。)

While we were visiting New York, the weather was terrible. (= during the time that we were visiting) (当我们访问纽约时,天气很糟糕。)

While I don't like New York, I understand why you choose to live there. (= Although I don't like New York) (尽管我不喜欢纽约,我能理解为什么你选择住在那里。)

Some people really enjoy swimming, while others are afraid of water. (used to emphasize the difference between two situations) (有些人确实喜欢游泳,而另一些人却见水就害怕。)

- “Question word + ever” and “no matter + question word” mean “regardless of”. They can be used interchangeably to introduce adverbial clauses of contrast, as in E., F., G. and H. (“疑问词 + ever”和“no matter + 疑问词”都意为“无论……;不管……”,它们引导的让步状语从句可以互换如 E, F, G 和 H 句。)
- Notice the use of inversion in adverbial clauses of contrast. Remember these patterns: however + adj./adv. + subject + verb; no matter how + adj./adv. + subject + verb; adj./adv. + as + subject + verb, as in F., H., and I. In that case, an adjective or adverb is placed before the subject and verb. (注意让步状语从句中的倒装结构。记住下列句型:however + 形容词/副词 + 主语 + 动词;no matter + how 形容词/副词 + 主语 + 动词;形容词/副词 + as + how + 主语 + 动词如 F, H 和 I 句。在这些倒装结构中,表语或状语放在主语和谓语动词前。)
- “Whether ... or” and “whether ... or not” expresses the idea that neither one condition nor another matters; the result will be the same. (“Whether...or” and “whether...or not” 表示无论出现第一种情况或另一种情况,结果都是一样的。)

## B. Grammar Exercises (语法练习)

1. Complete the sentences paying special attention to the use of tense and word order in the adverbial clauses.

(1) \_\_\_\_\_, I will go swimming today.

- a. As it is cold    b. As cold it is    c. Cold as it is    d. Cold as is it

(2) Rick \_\_\_\_\_ with our guide Joy on the phone when I arrived.

- a. talked    b. had talked    c. would talk    d. was talking

(3) Beijing \_\_\_\_\_ a lot since I visited it in 2005.

- a. changed    b. had changed  
c. changes    d. has changed

(4) \_\_\_\_\_, I couldn't open the door of the hotel room.

- a. However I tried hard                      b. Hard however I tried  
c. However hard I tried                      d. Hard I tried however
- (5) As soon as I \_\_\_\_\_ from Amanda, I will give you a phone call.  
a. have heard    b. hear                      c. will hear                      d. heard
- (6) Every time Susan \_\_\_\_\_ to Beijing on business, she calls on me.  
a. comes                      b. has come                      c. came                      d. is coming
- (7) When you \_\_\_\_\_ at the Temple of Heaven, the site tour guide will tell you everything about it.  
a. arrive                      b. have arrived                      c. will arrive                      d. arrived
- (8) \_\_\_\_\_ when he was told the bus was ready to leave.  
a. Rick had hardly started to enjoy the tourist site  
b. Rick hardly had started to enjoy the tourist site  
c. Hardly had Rick started to enjoy the tourist site  
d. Hardly did Rick start to enjoying the tourist site
- (9) I remember the first time when I saw Sanya. I remember the beautiful sunset while we \_\_\_\_\_ dinner near the beach.  
a. are having    b. were having                      c. have                      d. had
- (10) Ever since the first high-rise building of the world was constructed in Chicago in 1885, the city \_\_\_\_\_ for its skyscrapers.  
a. has been known                      b. was known  
c. has known                      d. knew
- (11) Whenever I \_\_\_\_\_ to Shanghai, I like to take a walk near The Bund.  
a. go                      b. am going                      c. went                      d. have gone
- (12) So no sooner \_\_\_\_\_ than the alarm went off and woke me up.  
a. did I fall asleep                      b. I fell asleep  
c. had I fallen asleep                      d. I had fallen asleep

2. Complete the answers using the words in brackets to introduce adverbial clauses.

Example:

The food was terrible. Did you eat it anyway? (even though)

→ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_, I ate it anyway.

(1) I won't believe him. What did he say? (whatever)

→ \_\_\_\_\_, I won't believe him.

(2) The bag is expensive. Are you going to buy it? (however)

→ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_, I am going to buy it.

(3) The weather was terrible. Did you stay at home? (although)

→ No, \_\_\_\_\_, I didn't stay at home.

- (4) Some of our travel group like to swim. Do others like to surf? (while)  
→ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_, others like to surf.
- (5) How much will the insurance company pay us? It won't be enough. (no matter how much)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_, it will never compensate us.
- (6) The tourists really want to see the original beauty of Hawaii. Where do the tourists come from? (wherever)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_, they really want to see the original beauty of Hawaii.
- (7) The tap water is not safe to drink. Does the guide recommend that you drink bottled water? (as)  
→ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_, the guide recommends that we drink bottled water.
- (8) Tai chi improves health. Is tai chi practiced by millions of Chinese? (since)  
→ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_, it is practiced by millions of Chinese.
- (9) It is the tour guide's job to change the sequence of activities in case of bad weather. Should a tour guide check the weather forecast? (because)  
→ Yes. A tour guide should check the weather forecast \_\_\_\_\_.
- (10) They won't be able to come. Do they have enough money? (whether...or not)  
→ No, \_\_\_\_\_ whether they have enough money or not.
- (11) Denver's official elevation is exactly one mile above sea level. Is this why the city is nicknamed "The Mile-High City"? (because)  
→ Denver is nicknamed "The Mile-High City" \_\_\_\_\_.
- (12) The majority of people in Montréal speak French at home. Do many people speak both French and English? (though)  
→ The majority of people in Montréal speak French at home \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Complete the following sentences by using one of the words below.

as	because	even though	whatever	now that
since	when	where	wherever	while

- (1) \_\_\_\_\_ there is a will, there is a way.
- (2) Tired \_\_\_\_\_ they were, they continued hiking through the hills of Yosemite Park.
- (3) I haven't seen any snow \_\_\_\_\_ I moved to the south ten years ago.
- (4) \_\_\_\_\_ we went in this city, we met friendly people.



- (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the semester is over, I am going to take a trip.
- (6) \_\_\_\_\_ you arrive at the airport, you need to check your bags at the ticket counter first.
- (7) \_\_\_\_\_ we only have a few days together, I hope we will all get to know everyone in our group.
- (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the circumstances might be, it is important for everyone to be friendly in a travel group.
- (9) When you're packing, you'll want to include daily medicine \_\_\_\_\_ they may be hard to find in another country.
- (10) \_\_\_\_\_ hotels are run in different ways, the basic aim remains the same: to create "a home away from home" for all traveling guests.
4. Underline all the subordinate clauses and then tell what kind of clauses they are. There are six clauses.

Altitude sickness is caused by dry air, a decrease in oxygen, and low air pressure when you travel to a higher altitude than you're used to. That's why you may have problems, such as shortness of breath and headaches. Some people are affected at 1,524 meters, while others aren't affected until they reach altitudes of 3,048 meters or more. Find out what altitude you're traveling to before you find out if altitude sickness could be a problem.

- (1) \_\_\_\_\_
- (2) \_\_\_\_\_
- (3) \_\_\_\_\_
- (4) \_\_\_\_\_
- (5) \_\_\_\_\_
- (6) \_\_\_\_\_

## Part VII Unit Review Exercises (单元综合练习)

### A. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

1. Write the following words in the appropriate section in the table that follows.

boost	chant	compete	croquet	debut	diversity
evolve	grounds	hook	impress	meditation	origin
pose	restriction	retrieve	tassel	tomb	

NOUN	VERB

2. In the following lists of words, three of the words are synonyms of the first word.

Circle the one word or phrase that is an **antonym**.

- (1) agile: quick, awkward, responsive, coordinated
- (2) avid: enthusiastic, uninterested, eager, excited
- (3) boost: decrease, enhance, improve, develop
- (4) bourgeois: land owner, aristocrat, business owner, working class
- (5) dawn: daybreak, sunrise, sunset, sunup
- (6) decadent: corrupt, moral, dishonest, wicked
- (7) efficient: economical, wasteful, capable, proficient
- (8) impressive: average, exciting, remarkable, inspiring
- (9) sharp: intelligent, clever, dull, bright
- (10) significant: important, major, essential, small

3. Use the vocabulary words in the box to complete the sentences that follow. Use the appropriate part of speech. Be careful with subject-verb agreement.

revive	efficient	age appropriate	restrict	inspire
top-ranked	diverse	evolve	debut	retrieve

- (1) You shouldn't let your four-year-old son play on a football team; it's not \_\_\_\_\_.
- (2) Most young athletes look up to \_\_\_\_\_ professionals.
- (3) In the Special Olympics, some competitors play sports in wheelchairs, which is very \_\_\_\_\_ to those of us who have never used a wheelchair.
- (4) The modern day Olympic Games \_\_\_\_\_ from the ancient Greeks who held competitive games every four years in a place called Olympia.
- (5) A new dance competition \_\_\_\_\_ on TV last spring.
- (6) Michael Phelps's success in the 2008 Olympics \_\_\_\_\_ many Americans interest in swimming.
- (7) Keeping score on computerized scoreboards is much more \_\_\_\_\_ than keeping score by hand.

- (8) There are still some schools that are \_\_\_\_\_ to male students only.  
 (9) Most Americans think there is no cultural \_\_\_\_\_ in China because they are not aware of the many ethnic minority groups.  
 (10) If your golf ball goes in the water, it will be impossible to \_\_\_\_\_ it!

### B. Dictation (听写)

First, listen to the entire paragraph to understand the main ideas. Then, listen to each sentence carefully and write down exactly what you hear on a separate piece of paper. Finally, listen to the whole paragraph one more time to check your sentences.

### C. Sentence combination (句子组合)

Adverbial clauses describe the main clause of a sentence by telling when, why, where, how, or under what condition. Sentences that have adverbial clauses can be written in two ways: with the adverbial clause at the beginning or with the adverbial clause at the end. Either way, the meaning is the same. If the adverbial clause is at the beginning of the sentence, it should be followed by a comma (like this sentence which begins with the subordinating conjunction “if”!) There should be no comma if the adverbial clause is at the end of the sentence (like this sentence where the “if” clause is at the end).

Join the following sentences using *whenever*, *wherever*, *although*, *so that*, or *unless*. Use each only once. Write the combined sentence in two ways.

- A. Write the combined sentence with the adverbial clause at the beginning. Use a comma between the adverbial clause and the main clause.  
 B. Then write the same sentence with the adverbial clause at the end. Use no comma.

1. I feel stressful. I practice yoga and meditate.

A. \_\_\_\_\_  
 B. \_\_\_\_\_

2. You shouldn't try doing the Korean see-saw. You've had some training.

A. \_\_\_\_\_  
 B. \_\_\_\_\_

3. Kungfu is traditionally a man's sport. Many women are becoming experts in it.

A. \_\_\_\_\_  
 B. \_\_\_\_\_

4. It is important to practice tai chi postures regularly. You can increase your

flexibility.

A. \_\_\_\_\_

B. \_\_\_\_\_

5. In China, you can see people practice tai chi. There is a park or green belt area.

A. \_\_\_\_\_

B. \_\_\_\_\_

**D. Translation (翻译)**

1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.

(1) Parks in America are often used for any sport that requires a fairly large marked field.

\_\_\_\_\_

(2) Ballroom dancing provides many seniors an opportunity to socialize after they retire.

\_\_\_\_\_

(3) Although there are a few exceptions, in China, women retire at 55 and men at 60.

\_\_\_\_\_

(4) It's inspiring to see the older women practice tai chi movements with even swords.

\_\_\_\_\_

(5) Ballroom dancing continues to be popular in China today, especially with seniors and college educated citizens.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 中国有哪些普及的体育运动?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. 强制退休在美国被定为非法。

\_\_\_\_\_

3. 她是世界级的顶尖网球选手。

\_\_\_\_\_

4. 迪斯科舞在中国越来越普及了。

\_\_\_\_\_

5. 有些(几个)中国留学生和我一道上过羽毛球课。

\_\_\_\_\_

# Unit 4

## Post Secondary Education in China ( 中国的高等教育 )

In this unit, Joy's tour group learns about higher education in China through visiting two notable Chinese universities: Beijing University and Shanghai Conservatory of Music. In Beijing, Joy provides the group with some general information about Beijing University before the group visits the campus. In Shanghai, after the guests have enjoyed a performance of traditional Chinese instruments at the Shanghai Conservatory of Music, Professor Shi, an Erhu ( Chinese two-string fiddle ) instructor, has a conversation with some of the guests.

## Part I Introduction (介绍):

### Getting Started (入门练习)

#### A. Warm-up Exercises (预习)

School mottos reflect the spirit and educational guidelines of a school and inspire the students of that school to carry forward its tradition.

1. First, draw a line to connect a school motto with its English translation.

- |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| (1) 博学而笃志,切问而近思 | (a) Noble in spirit; boundless in knowledge   |
| (2) 自强不息 厚德载物   | (b) Seek truth from facts   |
| (3) 气有浩然 学无止境   | (c) Self-discipline and social commitment   |
| (4) 实事求是        | (d) Learn and apply for the benefit of mankind  |
| (5) 饮水思源 爱国荣校   | (e) Seek truth and be creative  |
| (6) 诚朴雄伟 励学敦行   | (f) Learn extensively and adhere to aspirations;<br>inquire earnestly and reflect with self application |
| (7) 开物成务 励学利民   | (g) Be honest and intelligent; study hard and act<br>sincerely  |
| (8) 求是创新        | (h) When you drink water, never forget its source;<br>love your motherland and honor your alma mater    |

2. Can you match the following Chinese universities with their mottos? Write the letter next to the motto on the line next to its school.



(1) Qinghai University \_\_\_\_\_



(2) Fudan University \_\_\_\_\_



(3) Shanghai Jiaotong University \_\_\_\_\_



(4) Shandong University \_\_\_\_\_



(5)

Tianjin University \_\_\_\_\_



(6)

Nanjing University \_\_\_\_\_



(7)

Hong Kong Polytechnic  
University \_\_\_\_\_

(8)

Zhejiang University \_\_\_\_\_

### B. Joy's Introductory Speech (林欢的开场白): Beijing University (北京大学)



On their way to visit  
Beijing University, Joy gives  
the guests a brief introduction  
to the university.

### Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

sacred hall

comprehensive

/ˌkɒmpri'hensɪv/ *adj.*

distinguished

/dɪ'stɪŋɡwɪʃt/ *adj.*

all-inclusiveness

/ˈɔːlɪn'kluːsɪvnɪs/ *n.*

a holy or a highly respected place 殿堂; 神殿

including many things and covering multiple-  
subjects; complete 全面的

recognized for excellence; well known 卓越的

including everything 全面包括的

academic bias	unfair preference based on educational backgrounds or academic beliefs 学术偏见
patriotism /'pætriɪzəm/ <i>n.</i>	loyalty to one's country 爱国主义
intellectualism /ˌɪntəˈlektʃʊəlɪzəm/ <i>n.</i>	devotion to the pursuits of knowledge 追求知识和理性; 理智主义; 智性主义
affiliated /ə'fɪliɪtɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	closely connected to; associated with 附属的; 相关的

“Hi everyone. We are on our way to visit one of China's top universities — Beijing University. Although this is not my first visit to Beida (as it is known in China), I'm just as excited as you all are. Like millions of Chinese, since my childhood, Beida has been a dream university for me. Till this day, I still hope, in my lifetime, I will have the opportunity to attend a class at this prestigious university for even just a few days. Ever since it was founded in 1898, Beida has been viewed by generations of Chinese as the “sacred hall” of higher learning in China.

“Beijing University is the first national university established in China that covers comprehensive disciplines. In 1917, Cai Yuanpei, one of China's most distinguished educators, was appointed the president of Beida. He promoted the idea of “freedom of thought and all-inclusiveness”, which set up new guidelines for Beida's educational approach and established its style of study. Since then, Beida has strived to provide its students with an educational environment free of academic bias. In China's modern history, the faculty and students of Beida have played an important role in various movements that have contributed greatly to the democratic development and modernization of China. Beijing University's tradition, which emphasizes patriotism, progress, democracy and science, represents the spirit of Chinese intellectualism and the core values of higher education in modern China.

“As a leading institution of higher education in the nation, Beida now aims at becoming a world-class university in the 21st century. In the past decade, using its traditional strengths in the natural sciences, social sciences, and humanities, Beida has successfully expanded by embracing more branches of learning. In the year 2000, Beijing Medical University was merged into Beida to become the Beijing University Health Science Campus, which further



enhanced Beida's position as a top university in China. In addition to dozens of major laboratories, Beida now has eight affiliated hospitals and twelve teaching hospitals. Beijing University has become a center for teaching and research, and will continue to play an essential role in China's modernization.

"Located near the Summer Palace and Yuanmingyuan Garden, Beijing University is also well known for the beauty of its campus. I cannot wait to hear about your impressions of Beida after our tour of the campus this morning."

### C. Listening for the Main Idea (泛听)

Listen to Joy's speech carefully, and then answer the following two questions.

1. Why is Beida a dream school for many Chinese students?

---

2. What role has Beida played in China's modernization?

---

### D. Filling in the Blanks (填空)

Now listen to Joy's speech again and fill in the blanks.

"Hi everyone. We are on our way to visit one of China's top universities — Beijing University. Although this is not my first visit to Beida (as it is known in China), I'm just as excited as you all are. Like millions of Chinese, since my childhood, Beida has been a dream university for me. Till this day, I still hope, in my lifetime, I will have the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to attend a class at this (2) \_\_\_\_\_ university for even just a few days. Ever since it was founded in 1898, Beida has been viewed by generations of Chinese as the (3) "\_\_\_\_\_ of higher learning in China.

"Beijing University is the first national university established in China that covers (4) \_\_\_\_\_ disciplines. In 1917, Cai Yuanpei, one of China's most (5) \_\_\_\_\_ educators, was appointed the president of Beida. He (6) \_\_\_\_\_ the idea of "freedom of thought and (7) \_\_\_\_\_", which set up new guidelines for Beida's educational approach and established its style of study. Since then, Beida has strived to provide its students with an educational environment free of academic (8) \_\_\_\_\_. In China's modern history, the faculty and students of Beida have played an important role in various movements that have contributed greatly to the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ development and modernization of China. Beijing University's tradition, which (10) \_\_\_\_\_ patriotism, progress, democracy and science, represents the spirit of Chinese (11) \_\_\_\_\_ and the core values of higher

education in modern China.

“As a leading institution of higher education in the nation, Beida now aims at becoming a world-class university in the 21st century. In the past decade, using its traditional (12) \_\_\_\_\_ in the natural sciences, social sciences, and humanities, Beida has successfully expanded by (13) \_\_\_\_\_ more branches of learning. In the year 2000, Beijing Medical University was (14) \_\_\_\_\_ into Beida to become the Beijing University Health Science Campus, which further enhanced Beida’s position as a top university in China. In addition to dozens of major laboratories, Beida now has eight (15) \_\_\_\_\_ hospitals and twelve teaching hospitals. Beijing University has become a center for teaching and research, and will continue to play an (16) \_\_\_\_\_ role in China’s modernization.

“Located near the Summer Palace and Yuanmingyuan Garden, Beijing University is also well known for the beauty of its campus. I cannot wait to hear about your impressions of Beida after our tour of the campus this morning.”

#### E. Listening for Details (精听)

After you have listened to Joy’s speech several times, answer the following questions.

1. Is this Joy’s first visit to Beida? Why is she so excited about visiting Beida?
2. Who is Cai Yuanpei? What is one of his important contributions to Beida?
3. What important event occurred in the year 2000 for Beida? Why is that an important event?
4. What is Beida’s educational philosophy?
5. What is Beida’s goal for the 21st century?

## Part II Conversation 1 (对话 1):

### Beijing University (北京大学)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

exquisite /'ekskwɪzɪt/ *adj.*

mural /'mjʊərəl/ *n.*

delicate; intricate 精致(巧)的, 优雅的

wall paintings 壁画

ornamental /ˌɔːnə'mentəl/ <i>adj.</i>	decorative 装饰的
to be buried in ... <i>idiom.</i>	intensely concentrated on something 埋头于; 专心致志于
museology /ˌmjuːzɪ'blədʒɪ/ <i>n.</i>	science of museums 博物馆学
psychiatrist /psaɪ'kaiətrɪst/ <i>n.</i>	a doctor trained in treating people with mental, emotional, or behavioral disorders 心理医生
disorder /dɪs'ɔːdə/ <i>n.</i>	mental or physical problems 精神或身体的疾病
substantial /səb'stænʃəl/ <i>adj.</i>	considerable; a lot 重要的; 大量的
artifact /'ɑːtɪfækt/ <i>n.</i>	object made by humans 人工制品

*After their tour of Beijing University, the guests feel quite excited as they talk about their impressions of Beida at lunch.*

Ann: This is an eye-opening experience.\* I've been to famous campuses in America, Europe, Australia, and some other Asian countries. I thought I had seen it all ...; but this campus is like an imperial garden and a museum of traditional Chinese architecture ...

Robert: Oh, yes. Some of those historical structures are exquisite examples of traditional Chinese architecture ...

Joy: Beida's campus is actually situated on the site of some former royal gardens built in the Qing Dynasty.

Robert: How interesting! That's why we see such beautiful and harmonious Chinese-style landscaping.

Mike: I'm really impressed with Beida's West Gate with the painted murals on its ceiling. They are just as beautiful as the ones we saw in the Forbidden City.

Ann: I was surprised to see the white marble ornamental pillars and those stone lions on the campus ground. They look so much like the ones we saw on the Tian An Men Square ...

Peter: Now I can see why this is Joy's dream campus. It's so nice to see so many students buried in reading at the Weiming Lake and having group discussions next to the pagoda. They look so confident and energetic, walking between modern classroom buildings and older historical buildings...

Ellen: Joy, what is the name of that beautiful museum that we did not have

time to visit this morning?

Joy: It's Arthur M. Sackler Museum of Art and Archaeology. It's a teaching museum that incorporates all elements of modern museology.

Robert: Oh, I've heard of Dr. Sackler. He was a famous American psychiatrist and scholar of the arts. Some American medical institutions are named after him. He made substantial donations to several art museums in the United States, including a museum at Harvard University and some galleries at the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York.

Joy: Dr. Sackler helped Beida build this museum to preserve China's rich cultural heritage. This museum now has a permanent exhibit of more than 10,000 objects dating from 280,000 years ago to the 17th century. Some of the objects were excavated by the students and staff from Beida's Archaeology Department.

Peter: If I ever had a chance to come back to Beida, I would not miss the opportunity to visit the museum. I would also love to spend a day in that beautiful library overlooking Weiming Lake.

Joy: Oh, me, too. Beida's library is now the biggest university library in Asia. It holds a collection of over six million items including many rare books and ancient artifacts.

Mike: Wow, what a treasure! How many students are enrolled at Beida?

Joy: I'm not sure..., but I have Beida's information brochure here... Let's see... According to this brochure, Beida has 41 colleges/divisions which offer undergraduate study in 104 majors, Master degree programs in 258 majors and PhD programs in 228 majors. It has over 14,000 students enrolled in undergraduate programs, over 11,000 students enrolled in Master programs and about 5,500 students enrolled in PhD programs.

Ellen: We saw some international students on campus as well. Are there a lot of international students here?

Joy: Yes, actually there are. Beida has more than 2,400 international students from over 80 countries enrolled in its regular undergraduate and graduate programs.

Robert: Does Beida offer any short term Chinese culture and language programs in the summer?

Joy: Oh, yes. Scholars and students from all over the world come to Beida for short term teaching, research, and study programs throughout the year. They also come to attend various academic conferences.

Ellen: Robert, are you thinking of learning Chinese?

Robert: You know, I teach History of Asian Arts at Fullerton College, and I've always wanted to learn Chinese. I think I should take some beginning Chinese classes at my college first, and then come to Beida to take a summer Chinese class. What do you think, Joy?

Joy: Good plan! When I come to Beida next summer, I'll probably see you also "buried" in your Chinese books next to the Weiming Lake ...  
(All laugh.)

( \* This is an eye-opening experience. 这是一次大开眼界的经历。)

### B. Comprehension (综合理解)

Listen to the conversation again and decide if the following is True (T) or False (F).

1. \_\_\_\_ Joy has visited many famous universities in the world.
2. \_\_\_\_ Beida's campus is situated on the site of some former royal gardens built in the Qing Dynasty.
3. \_\_\_\_ The group visited Beida's Arthur M. Sackler Museum of Art and Archaeology.
4. \_\_\_\_ Beida now has the biggest university library in the world.
5. \_\_\_\_ Beida has over 2,000 international students enrolled in its short term international exchange programs.

Now, rewrite the false statements to make them true.

---

---

---

---

### C. Speaking Activities (口语练习)

For the following speaking activities, form groups of six.

1. Role-play the conversation and try to use some of your own vocabulary to express the same ideas.
2. How would you describe an ideal college? Have a group discussion on the topic and create a list of the qualities that you think a first-class university should have.

You may consider a school's history, academic and research achievements, faculty reputation, facilities, and student services, etc.

3. Use the list of qualities generated in the above group discussion as criteria to select three Chinese universities that can be considered "ideal".

### Part III Conversation 2 (对话 2):

#### Department of Chinese Music at Shanghai Conservatory of Music (上海音乐学院民乐系)



Professor Wei-ping Kong (second row, second from the right) and some American guests visited Shanghai Conservatory of Music and enjoyed a traditional Chinese instrument performance presented by Professor Shi Yin (first on the left, front row) and some students.

#### A. Vocabulary and Text (词汇与课文)

delicately /'delɪkətli/ <i>adv.</i>	subtly; gently 精巧的, 精致的
repertoire /'repətwa:(r)/ <i>n.</i>	musical pieces available for performance 常备剧目; 保留节目
encounter /ɪn'kaʊntə/ <i>v.</i>	meet somebody unexpectedly 偶遇; 邂逅
splatter /'splætə/ <i>v.</i>	spray with small droplets of liquid; scatter or fall in drops 嘀嗒落下; 溅水
patter /'pætə/ <i>v.</i>	make quick tapping sound 发出嗒嗒声; 噼啪响

chatter /ˈtʃætə/ v.	non-stop talking; make a rapid series of short high-pitched sounds 聊天; 闲聊
audition /ɔːˈdɪʃən/ n. /v.	test performance of a candidate 面试
ensemble /ɒŋˈsɒŋblə/ n.	a smaller group of performers 小型乐团; 剧团
proficiency test	a test to see if a skill has been mastered 程度考试
affordable /əˈfɔːdəbl/ adj.	not too expensive for s. o.; able to buy or pay for sth. 付得起的; 花费得起的
need-based /niːdbeɪst/ adj.	according to the need 按需的

*The guests have just enjoyed a traditional Chinese instrumental performance presented by some students from the Traditional Chinese Music Department of Shanghai Conservatory of Music. Professor Shi, an Erhu instructor and the director of the show, has a conversation with Joy and two American guests, both of whom are fine arts professors.*

Robert: Professor Shi, thank you so much for the wonderful performance. It was so enjoyable, and very educational at the same time.

Ann: Oh, yes. I was really impressed by that pipa solo performance. I could really feel the power of the ancient battle scene, and it was performed with only one instrument.

Robert: And at the same time, the interludes that describe the human emotions involved in the battle are so delicately refined. What's the name of the piece, again?

Shi: It's a masterpiece called "The Ambush from Ten Sides." It describes a famous historical battle in 202 B. C. It represents the "martial repertoire" of classical pipa solos. Joy, can you translate these lines in Bai Juyi's "Pipa Xing" (the Song of the Pipa) for our guests:

大弦嘈嘈如急雨,小弦切切如私语.

嘈嘈切切错杂弹,大珠小珠落玉盘.

Joy: Well, I learned its translation in college. These two lines I still remember. (To the guests) "Pipa Xing" is one of the best known Chinese classical poems written by Bai Juyi, a famous Tang Dynasty poet. The 754-word poem describes Bai Juyi's encounter with a female pipa player on the Yangtze River. There are many famous lines in this poem that are frequently quoted even today. The lines

Professor Shi just recited describe the sound of the pipa:

大弦嘈嘈如急雨: The bold strings rattle like splatters of sudden rain,

小弦切切如私语: The fine strings humm like lovers' whispers.

嘈嘈切切错杂弹: Chattering and pattering, pattering and chattering,

大珠小珠落玉盘: As pearls, large and small, on a jade plate fall.

*After more discussion on some other instruments and musical selections, the topic of the conversation shifts to student recruitment, instruction and career development.*

Robert: Professor Shi, how do you recruit these talented students? Do they also have to take the national college entrance examination?

Shi: Yes, they do. They take the entrance examination for liberal arts majors, and they need to achieve the minimum scores required of students who apply to institutes of fine arts and sports.

Ann: Do they have to audition after they pass the college entrance exam?

Shi: No. Actually an applicant needs to pass two auditions before the college entrance exam. The recruitment starts right after the Spring Festival, usually in February. Applicants who successfully pass both auditions will receive a qualifying certificate. And then, they will only need to achieve the minimum scores required for applicants of performing arts to be admitted.

Ann: Do students from all over the country come to Shanghai to audition?

Shi: No, we set up some regional recruitment centers outside of Shanghai so that students can audition at a local center closer to their hometown.

Robert: How many students apply to Shanghai Conservatory of Music each year?

Shi: About 1,200 to 1,300 apply on average, but we only admit about 300.

Ann: How are the students taught, in small classes or individually?

Shi: Each undergraduate student receives about four hours of individual instruction per week. In addition, to practice traditional music, they also form ensembles directed by faculty members.

Robert: Do they take other classes besides music-related courses?

Shi: Oh, yes. They take the general education courses as students of liberal arts, and they have to pass all the courses required by the curriculum to graduate.



- Ann: Does the traditional music department accept international students?
- Shi: Yes, we do. Right now we have about a dozen international students enrolled in our undergraduate programs. Most of them are from Asian countries.
- Robert: Do they need to know Chinese to enroll?
- Shi: Yes, they need to pass the Chinese proficiency test to enroll.
- Ann: What kind of jobs do the students get after graduation?
- Shi: Most of our graduates join professional orchestras, and some become music educators.
- Robert: How much is your annual tuition? Is it affordable for students from less developed areas?
- Shi: Currently, the tuition is around 10,000 RMB per academic year. Students can apply for need-based educational loans and various kinds of scholarships. The policy of the Ministry of Education prohibits schools from dropping admitted students because of their financial difficulties.
- Robert: Thank you so much for the information. I hope we will have an opportunity to collaborate on some cultural exchange programs with your institution.
- Shi: That would be great. Let's keep in touch and have more discussion in the future.

#### B. Questions for Comprehension and Critical Thinking (综合理解和逻辑思考)

Pair up with another student and answer the following questions together. Then, discuss your answers with the whole class.

1. Why does Professor Shi ask Joy to translate Bai Juyi's poem for the guests?
2. What is the application process for Shanghai Conservatory of Music?
3. Why do you think applicants of fine arts are only required to pass the minimum scores in the college entrance examination?
4. What happens if a student at the Shanghai Conservatory of Music has financial difficulty?
5. Do you think the graduates of the Shanghai Conservatory of Music are guaranteed a good career? Why or why not?
6. What are the benefits of cultural exchange activities?

### C. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

Fill in the blanks using vocabulary from Joy's speech and the two conversations in this unit. Make sure that you use the correct form of the word in the sentence. Use each of the words below one time.

merge	affiliated	essential	opportunity
distinguished	emphasize	recruit	proficiency

1. Dr. Arthur M. Sackler was a \_\_\_\_\_ American philanthropist and scholar of the arts.
2. Cai Yuanpei's educational philosophy \_\_\_\_\_ academic freedom.
3. Fudan University has ten \_\_\_\_\_ hospitals in Shanghai.
4. Since the beginning of the year, a number of banks have \_\_\_\_\_ in order to deal with the global economic crisis.
5. Science and technology development is playing an \_\_\_\_\_ role in China's economic prosperity.
6. Fullerton College has \_\_\_\_\_ a number of full time faculty members this year.
7. The candidates for the job will have to pass an English \_\_\_\_\_ test to qualify for the positions at this international law office.
8. The American guests really appreciated the \_\_\_\_\_ to meet with the faculty and students at Beida.

### Part IV Intensive Reading (精读):

#### The Annual College Entrance Examination in China (中国的高考)

#### A. Vocabulary and Text (词汇和课文)

anxious /'æŋkʃəs/ <i>adj.</i>	feeling nervous; worried or afraid 急切的; 焦急的; 担心挂念的
regimen /'redʒɪmen/ <i>n.</i>	systematic training 集训
competitive /kəm'petətɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	able to be more successful than others people; determined to win 竞争的; 比赛的

sprint /sprɪnt/ <i>n.</i>	fast run for a short distance 冲刺
fabulous /'fæbjʊləs/ <i>adj.</i>	amazing; excellent 极好的; 无比的; 难以置信的
ritual /'rɪtʃʊəl/ <i>n.</i>	sth. done regularly in the same way 礼节; 礼仪
immutable /ɪ'mju:təbl/ <i>adj.</i>	unchangeable 不变的
obsession /əb'seʃən/ <i>n.</i>	an idea or feeling that completely occupies the mind 摆脱不了的思绪; 执著; 执意
phenomenon /fɪ'nɒmɪnən/ <i>n.</i>	an observable fact or event that is uncommon in general 现象
perspective /pə'spektɪv/ <i>n.</i>	point of view 观点, 视角
elevate /'elɪveɪt/ <i>v.</i>	raise something up 提升; 提高
cornerstone /'kɔ:nəstəʊn/ <i>n.</i>	foundation; basis 基石
keep abreast of <i>idiom.</i>	meet or come up to a required standard; keep up with current ideas or requirements 跟上要求; 达到
make the cut <i>idiom.</i>	successfully pass (the test) 成功出线; 顺利通过 (考试) 标准
autonomous recruitment	自主招生
measure /'meɪʒə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	a way to evaluation 衡量; 测量

Every year in June, tens of millions of Chinese families experience one of the most important events in their lives. The parents of all these families are anxious for the same reason: their children will take the annual National College Entrance Examination, commonly known as “the Gaokao”. The results of this test will determine whether their children can go to college.

During the nine-hour examination, students will take tests in three mandatory subjects — Chinese, math and a foreign language. In addition, depending on which school and/or program they are applying to, they will take up to three more specialized subjects from among physics, biology, chemistry, geography, history or political education. To achieve good scores on the tests, students must have solid knowledge in the basics of the subjects as well as problem-solving skills.

The regimen of preparing a high school graduate for the Gaokao begins when a child starts school at the age of six or seven. Planning to win the race from the “starting line”, parents enroll their children in various kinds of after-school tutoring classes or art and music programs. They hope their

children can better develop their talents and potential to become more competitive among their peers. To these families, the Gaokao is the “final sprint” of the race. To optimize their children’s performance at the Gaokao, parents and relatives go out of their way to be supportive of examinees during the Gaokao period. Some parents use their annual vacation to stay home to take care of their children full time, and some parents book hotel rooms for their children to have a comfortable and quiet place to study and rest. Well-to-do families promise their children fabulous rewards if they get into a prestigious university; poor families reduce their food and clothing budget or even go into debt to pay for their children’s Gaokao expenses. On the exam days, across the nation, nervous family members, teachers and well-wishers wait outside the exam sites, sometimes even in heavy rain, as over ten million students compete for about six million college seats. “China may be changing at head-twirling speed”, a *New York Times* article remarks, “but the ritual of the Gaokao remains as immutable as chopsticks.”

Visitors from the countries where college education is easily accessible or not highly pursued may find it hard to understand the national quest for the Gaokao in China. A Western journalist even calls it a “national obsession”. But foreigners wouldn’t feel so puzzled by the phenomenon if they could see it from historical and cultural perspectives. “The worth of other pursuits is small; the study of books excels them all” is a philosophy that expresses the value deeply rooted in the Chinese culture. Millions of Chinese parents and students believe that attending a prestigious university is the best way for a young person to achieve a bright future. For students from rural areas or poor families, the Gaokao is an opportunity to change their fate. If they can attend a college, they will be able to live a better life, elevating their families’ financial and social status. A student’s successful admission to a top university is, therefore, considered a great family honor and sometimes celebrated not only by the student’s extended family, but by the whole village or town.

Since China started Reform and Opening-up in the late 1970s, the Chinese government has emphasized education as the cornerstone of China’s modernization, and has substantially increased the funding for higher education. Every year, over 56 billion RMB is used to fund more than 2,200 higher-learning institutions which educate over 20 million undergraduate and graduate students. However, even with this expansion, China’s post-secondary education still cannot keep abreast of the fast growing economy and

meet the ever-growing national need for higher education. Only about three out of five high school graduates can make the cut on the Gaokao for college admission, so intense competition will continue.

In the past few years, in order to achieve the goal of building world-class universities, China's higher education system has carried out a number of reforms which include the method of selecting students. China's top universities, including Beida, Tsinghua, Fudan, and others, now admit some of their freshmen through "Autonomous Recruitment." This new recruitment program supplements the Gaokao with a comprehensive evaluation which includes high school recommendations, college interviews, and other measures. With more and more universities adopting new recruitment programs each year, one has good reason to believe that the system in which the Gaokao is used as the only measure for college admission will be gradually reformed, and more deserving students will have the opportunity to pursue higher education in China.

#### B. Class Discussion (班级讨论)

1. Should the Gaokao be used as the only measure for college admission? Why or why not?
2. Is attending college the only way for young people to achieve success in China today? Why or why not?
3. Do you agree with the idea that "The worth of other pursuits is small, the study of books excels them all?" Why has this ancient concept remained prevalent in China?

#### C. Writing Exercises (写作练习)

1. Write down your daily routine in your senior year of high school. Then, write a short paragraph (5—8 sentences) to explain how you managed to handle the pressures in preparation for the Gaokao.
2. Make a list of things that Chinese parents might do to support their children during the Gaokao.
3. Use the ideas from 1 and 2 to write a short narrative essay (two to three paragraphs) about your Gaokao experience. Make sure you include important details about the whole process. End with your reflections or comments about the experience.

## Part V Reading Passage (泛读):

### Splendid China 4: Hangzhou, a Splendid and Beautiful City

(锦绣中华4:杭州——瑰丽漂亮的城市)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

approximately /ə'prɒksɪmətli/ <i>adv.</i>	nearly correct or exact 近似地; 大约
metropolis /mɪ'trɒpəlɪs/ <i>n.</i>	chief city of a region or country 大城市
antique /æn'tɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	belonging to the distant past 古时的; 古老的
bronze /brɒnz/ <i>n.</i>	alloy of copper and tin 青铜
ware /weə/ <i>n.</i>	manufactured goods 制造品
pottery /'pɒtəri/ <i>n.</i>	object made out of baked clay 陶器
vessel /'vesəl/ <i>n.</i>	a container for holding something 容器; 器皿
jade /dʒeɪd/ <i>n.</i>	hard, usually green, stone from which ornaments are carved 玉; 翡翠
emperor /'empərə/ <i>n.</i>	ruler of an empire 皇帝
route /ru:t/ <i>n.</i>	the way taken or planned to get from one place to another 路途; 路线
regime /reɪ'ʒi:m/ <i>n.</i>	a form or system of government 政体; 政权
nominate /'nɒmɪneɪt/ <i>v.</i>	formally decide on (a date or place) for an event 确定
populous /'pɒpjələs/ <i>adj.</i>	having a large population; densely populated 人口多的; 人口稠密的
take pleasure in	have satisfaction or enjoyment in 对……满意
antiquities /æn'tɪkwɪtiz/ <i>n.</i>	object or place that dates from ancient times 古物; 古迹
boast of	talk proudly about 自夸; 炫耀
consecutive /kən'sekjʊtɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	coming one after the other without interruption; following continuously 按顺序来的; 连续不断的
fragrance /'freɪgrəns/ <i>n.</i>	pleasant or sweet smell 芳香; 香味
founder /'faʊndə/ <i>n.</i>	person who founds or establishes something 建立者; 缔造者

Located approximately 180 km southwest of Shanghai is Hangzhou. Hangzhou is the capital of Zhejiang Province and is an important historical and cultural city well known throughout China. Yet, Hangzhou is a modern metropolis and is one of the most visited cities in China. To understand Hangzhou and its importance today, one should understand its past.



For almost 10,000 years, people have been living in the Hangzhou area. Proof of this is the antique bronze and stone wares, black pottery, cooking vessels, jade ritual articles, silk pieces and thread that have been found in that area. In the 21st century B. C. Emperor Yu of the Xia Dynasty once stopped by this town, giving Hangzhou its name. Yet, most historians will probably begin Hangzhou's history with the building of the Grand Canal that began in 486 B. C. Linking Hangzhou in the south with Beijing in the north, the Grand Canal was Imperial China's largest and oldest building project second only to the Great Wall. Because of its trade routes, Hangzhou became a famous economic and cultural center for the entire country during the Northern Song Dynasty.

When the Southern Song Dynasty moved its regime southward, Hangzhou was nominated as its capital, and remained so for 152 years. Located on the north bank of the Qiantang River, it is a garden-like city famous for its scenic charm. In time, it became one of the most populous cities in the world, and became the biggest international trade center and China's political and cultural center.

People in Hangzhou take pleasure in the antiquities of the city, yet appreciate the Chinese marvels of the 21st century. Hangzhou boasts of a new and promising tomorrow. According to a Forbes survey (2008), Hangzhou was named the best place to do business in China for the fifth consecutive year. Hangzhou is now high-tech. Just as California has its "Silicon Valley", Hangzhou has the "Software Zone" and is recognized by the national software industry. Beautiful buildings surround the city, and much of it displays the beautiful and graceful lines of the traditional "Art Deco" style. A few examples are the Zhejiang Hotel, and Ramada Plaza.

China has the longest history of tea culture. To the west of West Lake, is Longjing (Dragon Well) Village. When people visit West Lake, they can smell

the sweet fragrance of the growing tea from the surrounding hills. Zhejiang Province is one of the few locations to offer ideal conditions to grow the best tea: a mountainous area, mild climate, plentiful rainfall year-round. Hangzhou has been recognized to produce China's most famous Longjing Tea. In 1991, Hangzhou became home to the National Tea Museum.

Since the Tang Dynasty, silk products from Hangzhou have found their way all over the world. The world's largest silk museum, the China National Silk Museum, is located at the foot of Jade Emperor Hill. It opened in 1992, and the 10,000 sq m museum exhibits 5,000 years of silk history as well as fashion.

Hangzhou is also home of the Traditional Chinese Medicine Museum. The Hu Qingyu Tang pharmaceutical store is the original building started by its founder, Hu Xueyan, a well-known Chinese businessman active in the 1870s. The museum has been preserved and is a sample of the elegant Qing Dynasty architecture.

If you visit Hangzhou, remember the famous proverb: "In heaven there is paradise and on earth there are Hangzhou and Suzhou". For when you visit Hangzhou, you're half-way there.

#### B. Questions for Reading Comprehension (阅读理解题)

1. For how long have people in the Hangzhou's area been living? What proof is there of this?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What significance did the Grand Canal have on the history of Hangzhou?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Why does Hangzhou boast of a new and promising tomorrow?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What does Hangzhou have to do with tea?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. List two special museums in Hangzhou.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What is the famous proverb about Hangzhou?  
\_\_\_\_\_



## Part VI Grammar Review (语法复习):

### Adverbial Clause (2) (状语从句2)

#### A. Grammar Explanations (语法解释)

##### 1. Adverbial clause of condition (条件状语从句)

Adverbial clause of condition introduces possible conditions and the main clause indicates results. The clause can be introduced by the following words: if, even if, only if, unless, as/so long as, in case that, and etc. (条件状语从句描述可能的条件,主句说明可能导致的结果。从句常用 if, even if, only if, unless, as/so long as, in case that 等连词引导。)

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
if (如果,假如)	A. <u>If you order any large pizza and drink</u> , we'll add a free order of bread. (如果你订大比萨饼和饮料,我们会附送一份面包。)
even if (即使,虽然)	B. I won't be able to afford a house <u>even if I save a lot</u> . (即便我存很多钱,我也买不起一幢房子。)
only if (只有,只要)	C. The picnic will be canceled <u>only if it rain</u> . D. <u>Only if it rains</u> <u>will the picnic be canceled</u> . (只有遇到下雨,野餐才会取消。)
unless (除非,如果不)	E. We will leave <u>unless it snows tomorrow</u> . (除非明天下雪,否则我们将会离开。)
as/so long as (只要)	F. <u>As/So long as we don't give up</u> , we'll reach the top of the mountain. (只要我们不放弃,就能到达山顶。)
in case (that) (万一,以防)	G. He kept moving his fingers in case (that) they ( <u>should</u> ) freeze in the bitter cold. (他不停地活动手指以防它们在严寒中冻伤。) H. Confirm the hotel reservations <u>in case (that) there is any change</u> . (确认一下酒店订单以防有什么变化。)

#### Notes (注解)

- The simple present tense, not the future tense, is used in an adverbial clause of condition. (条件状语从句中通常用一般现在时,而不用一般将来时。)
- “Only if” expresses the idea that there is only one condition that will cause a

particular result. When “only if” begins a sentence, you need to invert the main clause, as in D. (only if 表示只有满足某一条件,才能导致某特定结果。only if 放在句首时,主句需倒装如 D 句。)

- “Unless” expresses the same idea of “if not”. It is used to say that something will happen or be true if something else does not happen or is not true. (unless 相等于 if not, 表示“除非, 如果不”的意思。)

Let's go for a walk unless you are too tired. (= Let's go for a walk if you are not too tired.) (如果你不太累的话,我们就去散步吧。)

- “In case that ” means “so as to be on the safe side”. You don't expect something to happen, but if it does ... We use “should” or use the simple present tense in the clause, as in G. and H. (in case that 意为“万一, 以防”, 虽然你觉得某事不大可能会发生, 但是万一……。in case that 引导的状语从句动词常用情态词 should 或用一般现在时如 G 和 H 句。)

## 2. Adverbial clause of manner (方式状语从句)

Adverbial clause of manner is used to talk about someone's behaviour or the way something is done. We can introduce the clause with the following words: as, just/exactly as, as if, as though, the way and etc. (方式状语从句说明某人的行为或做事的方式, 常用 as, just/exactly as, as if, as though, the way 等连词引导。)

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
as (如)	A. Do to others <u>as you would be done by</u> . (希望人家怎样待你, 你就应怎样待人。)
exactly/just as (正如)	B. I have changed the plan <u>exactly as you suggested</u> . (我已完全按你的建议修改了计划。) C. You may do <u>just as you please</u> . (你可以随心所欲去做。)
as if/though (好像, 仿佛)	D. It looks as <u>if/though it is going to rain very soon</u> . (看上去很快就要下雨了。) E. He looks as if/though he had been hit by lighting. (他看上去像被雷电击中了。)
the way (按……方法)	F. The boy is often not allowed to do things <u>the way he wants to do them</u> . (这小男孩通常不被允许按照他自己的意愿去做事。)

## Note (注解)

- “As if” and “as though” have the same meaning and usage, and therefore can be used interchangeably. They can be used to introduce a true or possible fact as in D. The idea following “as if/as though” can also be untrue and the verb is therefore in the subjective mood as in E. (as if 和 as though 意义和用法相同, 可

互换。它们可引导真实或实现可能性大的条件状语从句如 D 句;也可以引导与事实相反的非真实条件状语从句如 E 句,动词用虚拟语气。)

### 3. Adverbial clause of purpose (目的状语从句)

Adverbial clause of purpose is used to indicate the purpose of an action. It is commonly introduced by the following words: so that, in order that, for fear that, lest, and etc. (目的状语从句说明行为的目的,常用 so that, in order that, for fear that, lest 等连词引导。)

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
so that (以便)	A. I arrived at the cinema early so that I would not miss the beginning of the movie. (我早早到了电影院以免错过电影开头。)
	B. We got to the top of the mountain the previous night so that we could have a good view of the sunrise. (我们前一天晚上到了山顶,为了能好好观看日出。)
in order that (为了)	C. I sent the gift by air mail in order that it could reach my mom this week. (为了能让母亲在本周收到礼物,我用航空邮件寄出。)
for fear that (唯恐)	D. Tom hurried to the train station for fear that he (should) miss the train. (汤姆匆忙赶到火车站以免错过火车。)
lest (唯恐, 以免)	E. Give me a call first lest we (should) be out this weekend. (先给我们打个电话以免万一我们本周不在家。)

### Note (注解)

- “Should” is used after “for fear that” or “lest” when there is a future reference and “should” can be omitted. (由 for fear that 或 lest 引导的目的状语从句中的动词常和情态词 should 连用,但是情态词 should 可省略如 D 和 E 句。)

### 4. Adverbial clause of result (结果状语从句)

We can describe results of something with “so, so that, so ... that, such ... that, and etc. (结果状语从句常用 so, so that, so ... that, such ... that 等引导。)

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
so (这样)	A. You'll travel with a group of friendly people, so you'll never be lonely. (你会和一群友好的人一起旅游,这样你就不会感到孤独。)
so that (这样)	B. The guide spoke slowly and clearly so that everyone understood him. (导游讲解得又慢又清晰,这样每个人都能听懂。)

续表

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
so ... that (如此……以致)	C. The book was so <u>uninteresting</u> that I gave up reading after a few <u>pages</u> . (这本书如此无趣以致我只读了几页就不读下去了。)
such ... that (如此……以致)	D. It was such <u>an uninteresting</u> book that I gave up reading after a few <u>pages</u> . (这是如此无趣的一本书以致我只读了几页就不读下去了。)

## Notes (注解)

- “So that” is used to introduce adverb of result as in B. Sometimes, mainly in speaking, “that” can be omitted as in A. (so that 可以用来引导结果状语从句如 B 句, 在口语中可省略如 A 句。)
- “So ... that” and “such ... that” have the same meaning but different usage. “So ... that” is used with an adjective or adverb; so + *adj./adv.* + that ... “Such ... that” is used with a noun as in C., but the noun may have an adjective to modify it; such + (a/an) + (*adj.*) + n. + that ... as in D. (so ... that 和 such ... that 都可以用来引导结果状语从句, 表示“如此……以至于……”之意, 但用法不同。So ... that 与形容词或副词连用, 其结构为: so + 形容词或副词 + that ... 如 C 句; such ... that 与名词连用, 名词前面可以带形容词, 其结构为: such + (a/an) + (形容词) + 名词 + that ... 如 D 句。)
- “So that” can be used both in clause of purpose and clause of result. (so that 可以用来引导目的状语从句或结果状语从句。)  
We arrived early so that (= in order that) we could get good seats. (purpose 目的)  
(我们早到了为了能有好位子。)  
We arrived early so (that) we got good seats. (result 结果)  
(我们早到了结果有了好位子。)

## 5. Adverbial clause of comparison (比较状语从句)

This clause often describes how one thing/person is in comparison with another. We can make comparisons with “as ... as, not so/as ... as, more ... than, less ... than, the more ..., the more ...” and etc. (比较状语从句对两件事或两个人进行比较, 常用 as ... as, not so/as ... as, more ... than, less ... than, the more ..., the more ... 等引导。)

Conjunction (连词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
as ... as (和……一样)	A. Beijing University is as famous as Qinghua University. (北大和清华一样著名。) B. He didn't finish the crossword puzzle as quickly as I (did). (他没有和我一样快地做完纵横字谜。)
not so/as ... as (和……不一样,不如)	C. Tianjin University is not so/as well-known as Beijing University. (天津大学不如北京大学著名。)
more ... than (超过……,多于……)	D. The campus of Beijing University is more beautiful than I expected. (北大校园比我想象中的更漂亮。) E. The campus of Beijing University is much larger than I expected. (北大校园比我想象中的更大。)
less ... than (不到……,少于……)	F. Tickets to Beijing Opera were less expensive than I had expected. (京剧的票比我预期的便宜。)
the more ..., the more ... (越……,越……)	G. The more you practice, the better you will be. (你练习得越多就会越好。)

### Notes (注解)

- When an adverbial clause of comparison is introduced by “as”, a positive degree is used. “As ... as” is used in affirmative sentences, as in A. and B. and “not so/as ... as” is used in negative sentences, as in C. (由 as 引导的比较状语从句用形容词或副词的原级,肯定句用 as ... as 如 A 和 B 句,否定句用 not so/as ... as 如 C 句。)
- When an adverbial clause of comparison is introduced by “than”, a comparative degree is used. “More ... than” indicates to a greater degree, as in D. and E. “Less ... than” indicates to a smaller degree, as in F. (由 than 引导的比较状语从句用形容词或副词的比较级。More ... than 表示“超过……,多于……”如 D 和 E 句。Less...than 表示“不到……,少于……”如 F 句。)
- A bit, a little, rather, much, far, a lot, a great deal, still, even, and etc. can be used to modify the comparative degree of an adjective and adverb, as in E. (a bit, a little, rather, much, far, a lot, a great deal, still, even 等可用来修饰比较级,表示“……得多”如 E 句。)
- We may use an auxiliary in adverb clause of comparison to replace a verb in the main clause, as in B. (比较状语从句可以用助动词来替代主句中的谓语动词如 B 句。)

**B. Grammar Exercises (语法练习)****1. Complete the following sentences.**

Example:

Make sure to bring backup reading, in case ...

→ Make sure to bring backup reading, in case you get bored with the first book.

- (1) I remained at home lest ...
- (2) Don't promise anything unless ...
- (3) You can go to the National Gallery if ....
- (4) Tom hurried to the train station for fear that ...
- (5) I took a lot of photos during this trip so that ...
- (6) I am so tired after climbing the mountain that ...
- (7) This book is written in such easy English that ...
- (8) You'll travel with a group of friendly people, so ...
- (9) You'd better take your credit card with you in case ...
- (10) Children believe that Santa Clause leaves gifts in their stockings — but only if ...
- (11) They should have extra seats on the tour bus for us as long as ....
- (12) We asked the hotel clerk for a wake-up call lest ...

**2. Join the following sentences with the words in brackets.**

Example:

Take an umbrella with you. It might rain. (in case)

→ Take an umbrella with you in case it (should) rain.

- (1) You must be tired. We'll go right to the hotel. (so)

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (2) The cave is very big. It is in fact another world under the ground. (so ... that)

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (3) Let's go by the subway. There might be a lot of traffic on the highway. (lest)

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (4) There was a delay. We missed our connecting flight. (such ... that)

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (5) Our goal is to raise pandas. They can go and survive in the wild. (so that)

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (6) California has its “Silicon Valley”. Hangzhou has the “Software Zone”.  
(just as)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
- (7) The time together will be more enjoyable. The tour group is friendly and close. (if)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
- (8) I will tell you the truth. You promise you won’t get angry. (only if)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
- (9) We’ll leave the White House before 12 o’clock. We can have an hour for lunch (so)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
- (10) You may not have a chance to visit the Eiffel Tower. You will see its top from all over Paris.  
(even if)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
- (11) The gates of the Forbidden City are beautiful. Beida’s West Gate is also beautiful. (as ... as)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
- (12) John may call. Tell him I will call him back in an hour. (in case)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
3. Each of the following sentences contains one error. Cross out the error and correct it.
- (1) The dinner was much expensive than we had expected.
  - (2) When the football fans saw Beckham, they got such excited that they cried out.
  - (3) Please let the guide know if you are not feeling well, so that he shall find medical help for you.
  - (4) Don’t worry unless you don’t speak that language; our expert guides will be there to help you.
  - (5) A guide should confirm restaurant meal arrangements for his guests as if they need to eat first before checking in at the hotel.
  - (6) London is so big and so varied a city that you can spend years there and still find things that are new and exciting.
  - (7) If you’re very rich, you may find it more sensible to do your shopping in more humble places.
  - (8) The University of Texas is located here, in order that the city has a large student population.

- (9) Since each nation has its own unique holidays, many traditional and official holidays have similarities around the world.
- (10) The weather was so perfect during our vacation, as if it is meant especially for us.
- (11) Hainan was so fun a vacation we plan on visiting again next year.
- (12) The better you understand basic sentence structures, the easy it will be for you to use proper grammar phrases.

4. Complete the passage with the following words given in the chart.

in case	in order	not as ... as	so ... that	such ... that
that	what	when	which	

We create new words all the time. We have to do this (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to express new ideas. Perhaps the strangest word (2) \_\_\_\_\_ has come into the English language recently is “wysiwyg”. I was (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (puzzled by this word) I kept asking people (4) \_\_\_\_\_ it meant. But no one knew. Last week I found it in a dictionary. It is (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (peculiar) I had thought. It comes from computers. This is what it means, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ you want to know: “What You See Is What You Get”. This means (7) \_\_\_\_\_ what you see on your screen is what you get (8) \_\_\_\_\_ you print. Now I discover that everyone knows this word. The other day I was in my favourite restaurant and ordered sausages. They were (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (small sausages) I complained to the waitress. She just smiled at me and whispered: “wysiwyg!”

## Part VII Unit Review Exercises (单元综合练习)

### A. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

1. Use the phrases/expressions below to complete the short dialogues. Use each expression once. Then, practice the dialogues with a partner.

can't wait to ...

collaborate on ...

bury oneself in ...

prohibit ... from ...

- (1) A: Have you seen Lisa Lately?

B: No. I called her a couple of times, but she was never home. Since she got her new job, she \_\_\_\_\_ her work.

- (2) A: Did you meet any scientists from the United States at the conference?

B: Yes, I did. We had some very good discussions, and we have decided to



- \_\_\_\_\_ some new research projects.
- (3) A: Why have those soda vending machines been removed from this school?  
B: That's because the school district now \_\_\_\_\_ vendors \_\_\_\_\_ selling sugary soda to kids on school campuses.
- (4) A: I've booked the airplane tickets for our summer trip to New York.  
B: Great! I \_\_\_\_\_ visit the Metropolitan Museum of Arts in that city!
2. Studying word families helps build vocabulary more effectively. For this exercise, write down the verb and adjective forms of the following nouns.

Noun	Verb	Adjective
education	_____	_____
impression	_____	_____
inclusion	_____	_____
performance	_____	_____
prohibition	_____	_____

Now, use the correct form of the above words to complete the following sentences.

- (1) The exhibits in the museum of archaeology are very \_\_\_\_\_.
- (2) The visitors were really \_\_\_\_\_ with the traditional Chinese architecture.
- (3) This public school advocates \_\_\_\_\_ education which means that all students in a school, regardless of their strengths or weaknesses in any area, become part of the school community.
- (4) The musicians' wonderful \_\_\_\_\_ received a standing ovation.
- (5) Smoking is now \_\_\_\_\_ on the campus of most American colleges.

### B. Dictation (听写)

First, listen to the entire paragraph to understand the main idea. Then listen to each sentence carefully and write down exactly what you hear on a separate piece of paper. Finally, listen to the whole paragraph one more time to check your sentences.

### C. Sentence combination (句子组合)

1. Circle the correct word to combine the two clauses. Write the combined sentence on the line.
- (1) because / that
- Beida has a reputation of being the “sacred hall” of higher education in China.
- Beida is many Chinese students’ “dream university.”

## (2) after / until

There were no national universities in China before 1898.  
Beida was founded in 1898.

## (3) how / why

Those archaeologists excavated some valuable ancient artifacts.  
The documentary shows the excavation process.

## (4) what / if

Robert wants to learn Chinese.  
Robert may take a summer Chinese class at Beida.

## (5) who / which

Bai Juyi wrote many well-known poems.  
Bai Juyi was a famous poets in the Tang Dynasty.

2. Combine the following pairs of sentences using one of the given words. Use each word once.

when	who	which	if	so that
------	-----	-------	----	---------

- (1) The guests were very impressed. The guests attended a performance of traditional Chinese instruments.
- (2) Some of the artifacts are on permanent exhibit at Beida's Museum of Arts and Archaeology. The artifacts were excavated by some Beida faculty members and students.
- (3) You want to apply to the Shanghai Conservatory of Music. You will need to pass two auditions.
- (4) The foreign guests arrived at Beida. The foreign guests were surprised to see a garden-like campus.
- (5) The school provides students with need-based financial aid. No students will have to drop school because of financial difficulties.

**D. Translation (翻译)**

1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.

- (1) Ever since it was founded in 1898, Beida has been viewed by generations of

Chinese as the “sacred hall” of higher learning in China.

- 
- (2) Even on weekends, you can still see many Beida students at the library buried in reading.
- 
- (3) Beida's campus is also well-known for its beautiful and harmonious Chinese-style landscaping.
- 
- (4) Some of the artifacts on exhibit at Beida's Arthur M. Sackler Museum were excavated by the students and staff from Beida's Archaeology Department.
- 
- (5) Pipa solo “The Ambush from Ten Sides” describes a famous historical battle in 202 B. C.
- 

2. Translate the following sentences into English.

- (1) 这次的文化交流活动令我们大开眼界。
- 
- (2) 听众们被琵琶独奏的演出深深感动。
- 
- (3) 我朋友已经通过上海音乐学院的两轮专业面试了。
- 
- (4) “琵琶行”是白居易所做的最著名的唐诗之一。
- 
- (5) 有经济困难的中国大学生可以申请按需补助的教育贷款和各种奖学金。
-

## *Nuit 4*

# Unit 5

## Chinese Holidays ( 中国的节日 )

In this unit, Joy introduces her tour group to some interesting traditional Chinese holidays as well as several newer official holidays. The group discusses similarities and differences between Chinese holidays and holidays celebrated in the West, particularly in the United States.

## Part I Introduction (介绍):

### Getting Started (入门练习)

#### A. Warm-up Exercises (预习)

Write the name of the holiday on the line next to the special food traditionally eaten during the holiday.



1. \_\_\_\_\_



2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_



5. \_\_\_\_\_

Now discuss the following questions in small groups.

- Which of the above holiday foods is your favorite?
- Do you know how to make/cook some of the above holiday foods?
- In addition to special foods, how are the above holidays celebrated in your hometown?
- What is the history/legend of your favorite holiday?
- How did you and your family celebrate your favorite holiday last year?

Answers for the discussion questions will vary.

## B. Joy's Introductory Speech (林欢的开场白)

### Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

rebellion /rɪ'beljən/ <i>n.</i>	attempt to change a government or established practice 造反
overthrow /ˌəʊvə'θrəʊ/ <i>v.</i>	to force out a leader or government 推翻
rumor /'ru:mə/ <i>n.</i>	false or exaggerated piece of news or personal information that passes from person to person 谣言
plague /pleɪg/ <i>n.</i>	major outbreak of a disease that is easily spread 瘟疫
distribute /dɪ'strɪbjʊt/ <i>v.</i>	give out to each person in a group 分布, 散发
coordinate /kəʊ'ɔ:dɪnət/ <i>v.</i>	organize the efforts of many people 协调
gaze /geɪz/ <i>v.</i>	look at in an admiring way 凝视; 注视
imprinted /ɪm'prɪntɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	pressed or printed onto something 有印记的
crust /krʌst/ <i>n.</i>	hard outside part of a baked pastry 面包皮
statesman /'steɪtsmən/ <i>n.</i>	a respected government leader 政治家
fed up with	very tired of; unable to bear anymore 受够了; 受不了
corruption /kə'rʌpʃən/ <i>n.</i>	dishonesty at an official level 腐化
banish /'bænɪʃ/ <i>v.</i>	force a person to leave and never return to a particular area 流放
rival /'raɪvəl/ <i>n./adj.</i>	near-equal competitor; competing 劲敌; 实力相当的手
despair /dɪ'speə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	extreme depression; loss of hope 绝望
beloved /brɪ'lʌvɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	well-loved 热爱的
paddle /'pædl/ <i>v.</i>	move a boat forward by using flat sticks 船桨

anniversary /ˌænɪˈvɜːsəri/ <i>n.</i>	regular celebration of an important event on the same day 周年纪念日
packet /ˈpækɪt/ <i>n.</i>	small envelope or package 包裹
prevent /prɪˈvent/ <i>v.</i>	prevent sb. from doing sth.; not allow someone to do something; stop something from happening 预防

### Joy's Speech

It's almost October, so we are coming up on the holiday season in China. The holidays here are quite a bit different than those in Western countries. While we're riding on the bus today, I'd like to tell you about the traditions behind two of my favorite holidays: Mid-Autumn Festival and Dragon Boat Festival.

Mid-Autumn Festival is celebrated on the 15th day of the 8th month of the Chinese calendar, usually sometime in October. There are many legends behind this holiday, so I'll just tell you the most interesting one: more than six hundred years ago, during the Yuan Dynasty, the Han nationality people were ruled by Mongols. A man named Zhu Yuanzhang used mooncakes to organize a rebellion. How can a pastry overthrow a regime, you may ask? Well, Zhu Yuanzhang and his advisor Liu Bowen spread a rumor that the only way to prevent a deadly plague from spreading was to eat mooncakes. This allowed their mooncakes, which had secret messages hidden in them, to be distributed quickly. In this way, the Han people were able to coordinate their attack and overthrow the Mongol rulers.

Today Mid-Autumn Festival is one of the most important traditional holidays in China. On that night, the moon is the fullest and most beautiful. Families gather together in the evening to gaze at the moon and feast on tea, wine and mooncakes — delicious sweet pastries imprinted with symbols and Chinese characters on the outer crust. Inside is a rich filling that sometimes contains a whole egg yolk for good luck. We also eat fruit, especially round fruit that resembles the full moon. When we look at the moon, we think of our loved ones who are in other parts of the world, and we know that they are looking at the same moon and thinking of us.

My other favorite holiday is Dragon Boat Festival. It is celebrated in the spring on “Double Fifth Day,” the fifth day of the fifth month of the Chinese calendar. On this day, people eat “zhongzi”—steamed glutinous rice wrapped



in bamboo leaves. They also watch rowing races, which are held on lakes and rivers. The boats are beautifully decorated with colorful dragons. This is one of my favorite holidays because of the story behind it.

In the State of Chu during the Warring States period, around 400-200 B. C., there lived a great poet and statesman named Qu Yuan. Fed up with the corruption in the government, he began to criticize the king and demand changes. Unfortunately, he was banished from the kingdom. For many years he wandered the countryside, writing poems about his patriotism and love for the people. In 278 B. C., the capital of the State of Chu was captured by the rival State of Qin. Filled with despair at the loss of his beloved state, Qu Yuan jumped into the Miluo River holding a huge rock in his arms. The local fishermen tried to save him. They paddled up and down the river looking for him, banging their paddles on the water to distract the hungry fish. Every year after that, on the anniversary of his death, the townspeople would throw packets of rice into the river to prevent the fish from eating Qu Yuan's body. These traditions have continued over thousands of years, and today Dragon Boat races are held not only in China, but all over the world.

#### C. Listening for the Main Idea (泛听)

Listen to Joy's speech carefully. Then answer the following two questions in your own words.

1. According to the legend, how were mooncakes used to overthrow the Mongol rulers?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Why are rowing races held on Double Fifth Day?  
\_\_\_\_\_

#### D. Filling in the Blanks (填空)

Now listen to Joy's speech again and fill in the blanks.

"It's almost October, so we are coming up on the holiday season in China. The holidays here are quite a bit different than those in Western countries. While we're riding on the bus today, I'd like to tell you about the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ behind two of my favorite holidays: Mid-Autumn Festival and Dragon Boat Festival.

"Mid-Autumn Festival is celebrated on the 15th day of the 8th month of the Chinese calendar, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ sometime in October. There are many legends behind this holiday, so I'll just tell you the most interesting one: more than six hundred years ago, during the Yuan Dynasty, the Han nationality people were ruled by Mongols. A man named Zhu Yuanzhang used mooncakes to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a

rebellion. How can a pastry overthrow a regime, you may ask? Well, Zhu Yuanzhang and his advisor Liu Bowen spread a rumor that the only way to prevent a deadly plague from (4) \_\_\_\_\_ was to eat mooncakes. This allowed their mooncakes, which had secret (5) \_\_\_\_\_ hidden in them, to be distributed quickly. In this way, the Han people were able to coordinate their attack and overthrow the Mongol rulers.

“Today Mid-Autumn Festival is one of the most important holidays in China. On that night, the moon is the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ and most beautiful. Families gather together in the evening to gaze at the moon and feast on tea, wine and mooncakes — delicious sweet pastries imprinted with symbols and Chinese (7) \_\_\_\_\_ on the outer crust. Inside is a rich filling that sometimes contains a whole egg yolk for good luck. We also eat fruit, especially round fruit that (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the full moon. When we look at the moon, we think of our loved ones who are in other parts of the world, and we know that they are looking at the same moon and thinking of us.

“My other favorite holiday is Dragon Boat Festival. It is (9) \_\_\_\_\_ in the spring on ‘Double Fifth Day,’ the fifth day of the fifth month of the Chinese calendar. On this day, people eat ‘zhong-zi’ — steamed glutinous rice (10) \_\_\_\_\_ in bamboo leaves. They also watch rowing races, which are held on lakes and rivers. The boats are beautifully (11) \_\_\_\_\_ with colorful dragons. This is one of my favorite holidays because of the story behind it.

“In the State of Chu during the Warring States period, around 400-200 B. C., there lived a great poet and statesman named Qu Yuan. Fed up with the corruption in the government, he began to criticize the king and demand (12) \_\_\_\_\_. Unfortunately, he was banished from the kingdom. For many years he wandered the countryside, writing (13) \_\_\_\_\_ about his patriotism and love for the people. In 278 B. C., the capital of the State of Chu was captured by the rival State of Qin. Filled with despair at the (14) \_\_\_\_\_ of his beloved state, Qu Yuan jumped into the Miluo River holding a huge rock in his arms. The local fishermen tried to save him. They (15) \_\_\_\_\_ up and down the river looking for him, banging their paddles on the water to distract the hungry fish. Every year after that, on the anniversary of his death, the townspeople would throw packets of rice into the river to (16) \_\_\_\_\_ the fish from eating Qu Yuan’s body. These traditions have continued over thousands of years, and today Dragon Boat races are held not only in Southern China, but all over the world.”

#### E. Listening for Details (精听)

Listen to Joy’s speech again and decide whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F). Then change the false statements to make them true.

- \_\_\_ 1. Zhu Yuanzhang put secret messages in mooncakes in order to prevent a deadly plague from spreading.
- \_\_\_ 2. On Mid-Autumn Festival, families gather together to eat steamed glutinous rice.
- \_\_\_ 3. The Dragon Boat Festival is celebrated on “Double Fifth Day.”
- \_\_\_ 4. Qu Yuan jumped into the river because he wanted to escape from the rival state of Qin.
- \_\_\_ 5. The fishermen banged their paddles on the water to prevent the fish from eating Qu Yuan’s body.

## Part II Conversation 1 (对话1):

### Official Holidays in China (中国的法定假日)

#### A. Vocabulary and Text (词汇与课文)

dressed up	wearing nice clothes 打扮起来的
spur the economy	help the economy by getting people to spend money 拉动经济
wedding party	a bride, groom, and other people directly involved in a wedding ceremony 婚礼聚会; 婚礼宾主
investment /ɪn'vestmənt/ n.	to put money into something to make a profit or get an advantage 投资
exhibition /ˌeksɪ'bɪʃən/ n.	a public display or demonstration that people can see 展览
big(ger) deal	a (more) significant event 重大事情
tax break	a reduced tax allowed by the government for a specific purpose 减税
deduct /dɪ'dʌkt/ v.	subtract 扣除
interest /'ɪntrɪst/ n.	additional percentage of money which is added to the loan amount and paid back in payments 利息
mortgage /'mɔːɡɪdʒ/ n.	money borrowed to purchase a home 房屋抵押贷款
income tax	money paid to the government that is a percentage of a person’s yearly earnings 所得税
inferior /ɪn'fɪərɪə/ adj.	of lower quality 低等的
reverse /rɪ'vɜːs/ v.	change to the opposite direction 逆转; 倒转
fundamental /ˌfʌndə'mentəl/ adj.	basic 基本的; 根本的

*At lunch, Karen, Natalie, and Mark ask Joy about National Day and how it is celebrated. This leads into a discussion about official holidays in China and what they reveal about a society.*

Karen: It seems like the people in the streets are more dressed up than usual.

John: Yeah, I've seen a lot of people carrying gifts and flowers.

Joy: It's because we've just celebrated the October 1st National Day and we are still in the "Holiday Golden Week".

Mark: But why are they dressed up? We don't dress up at all for the Fourth of July\*. And we certainly don't exchange gifts.

Joy: Traditionally, Chinese people dress up on major holidays and exchange gifts when they visit each other on holidays. A few years back the government started giving everyone a whole week off for National Day to help spur the economy.

Mark: What a great idea! When people aren't working, they always spend more money. I wish we had a whole week off!

Joy: It's ideal for family vacations. A lot of people take the opportunity to travel to other parts of China.

John: I've also noticed several wedding parties. Brides wear red in China, right?

Joy: That's right. Traditionally they wear red, but nowadays, they also wear white for the wedding ceremony and for photos. It's very popular to have weddings this week.

Karen: Hmmm. I guess that's because it's easier for whole families to get together when everyone has the week off.

Joy: Another interesting aspect of the Holiday Golden Week is that people are encouraged to purchase houses or apartments. There are new apartment exhibitions all over the country. A lot of people buy houses or apartments or make other major family investments.

Karen: Wow. It sounds like a bigger deal than the Fourth of July. But what's interesting to me is how the government is able to use the holiday to direct public behavior.

Mark: In the U. S., the way the government affects public behavior is by giving tax breaks. For example, if you buy a house, you can deduct

the amount of interest you pay on your mortgage from your income taxes.

John: You could say that Mother's Day and Father's Day influence people. Those days remind us how important our parents are and that we should appreciate and respect them. Do you have those holidays in China, Joy?

Joy: Well, actually we don't. We have an International Women's Day on March 8, but we don't have a day for parents.

Karen: That's surprising! I would've thought you'd have big holidays for parents since respecting elders is such an important part of Chinese culture.

Joy: Well, you could say that every day is Mother's Day and Father's Day in China. We don't need a day to remind us to respect our elders. But we do have a Children's Day.

John: Children's Day? Ooooh, I like the sound of that.

Karen: Every day is Children's Day in the U. S. We definitely don't need that holiday!

Mark: So what exactly do you do on International Women's Day?

Joy: On that day the women don't go to work or only go for half a day. And the men are encouraged to do all the cooking and other housework.

Mark: Hey, I don't like the sound of this holiday at all\*\*!

Karen: Come on, Mark, it's a fantastic idea! I'm going to write it on my calendar right now!

Joy: You should! This holiday has helped new China put an end to the thousand-year-old belief that women are inferior to men. And it's working! Every year on this holiday the whole nation is educated on the value and importance of women in society, in the workplace, and in the family.

Karen: It sounds like Women's Day has definitely helped reverse a bad tradition.

Joy: Yes, I agree. Another newer holiday worth mentioning is Teacher's Day.

Mark: I'm surprised you have a Teacher's Day. Isn't respect for teachers already a fundamental cultural value just like respect for elders?

Joy: Yes, of course. But there was a time during the so-called "Cultural

Revolution” when teachers were dishonored and criticized. I think this holiday is an attempt to make up for those dark days.

Karen: Hmm. I never thought about how holidays both reflect and affect our basic social values. A good example of a newer holiday like that in the U. S. is Martin Luther King’s Birthday\*\*\*.

Joy: We’ll have to continue this conversation later. We’re already at our next stop!

( \* The Fourth of July, also called Independence Day, celebrates the birthday of the United States of America. On July 4, 1776, the thirteen American colonies signed the Declaration of Independence, which officially separated them from England and started the Revolutionary War.

\*\* “like/don’t like the sound of sth.”; expression said when a person does/doesn’t like an idea

\*\*\* Martin Luther King is a black civil rights leader who was assassinated on April 4, 1968. He worked for equal rights for black Americans in the 1950s and 1960s. One of his most famous speeches is the “I Have a Dream” speech. )

### B. Comprehension (综合理解)

Pair up with another student and answer the following questions about the previous conversation. Then, discuss your answers with the whole class.

1. Why is Mark surprised that people dress up for National Day?
2. According to Joy, what is the purpose of “Holiday Golden Week”?
3. According to Natalie, what is the purpose of Mother’s Day and Father’s Day in the U. S. ?
4. Why is International Women’s Day so important in China?
5. According to Karen, why isn’t there a Children’s Day in the U. S. ?
6. Why is Mark surprised that China has a Teacher’s Day?

### C. Speaking Activities (口语活动)

For the following activities, form groups of four.

1. Practice the conversation between Joy, Mark, Natalie and Karen. Take turns reading the four different parts. Then, try to say each person’s ideas in your own words.
2. Discuss how you celebrate each of the following holidays in your family:
  - a. National Day
  - b. International Women’s Day

c. Children's Day

Does everyone in the class celebrate these holidays in the same way, or are there some differences?

3. Play "Guess That Holiday." Select one student to be "IT." He or she should choose a holiday but not tell the others which one it is. Then the other students try to guess the holiday by asking YES/NO questions. The first student who guesses the holiday gets to be "IT" for the next round. For example:

IT: Okay. I have one.

A: Is it in the summer?

IT: No.

B: Is it a spring holiday?

IT: Yes.

C: Is it a holiday to honor workers?

IT: No.

A: Is it a holiday to plant trees?

IT: No.

B: Is it a holiday to honor ancestors?

IT: Yes.

C: Is it Qing Ming?

IT: Yes!

### Part III Conversation 2 (对话2):

#### Traditional Holidays: Spring Festival & Christmas (传统节日: 春节和圣诞节)

#### A. Vocabulary and Text (词汇与课文)

Thanksgiving /'θæŋks,gɪvɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	American holiday celebrated on the fourth Thursday of November 感恩节
Christmas tree	evergreen tree that is covered with lights, colored balls and other decorations 圣诞树
string /strɪŋ/ <i>v.</i>	hang up something in a line 用线挂起来
Christmas ornaments	decorations that are hung on a Christmas tree 圣诞装饰

snowflake /'snəʊfleɪk/ n.	tiny piece of snow that falls from the sky 雪花
angel /'eɪndʒəl/ n.	a spiritual being who lives with God in heaven; angels are often pictured as humans in white robes with wings 天使
service /'sɜːvɪs/ n.	a religious ceremony for public worship 宗教礼拜仪式
carol /'kærəl/ n.	a traditional song sung at Christmas 圣诞颂歌
Jesus Christ	the person whom Christians believe is God's Son born as a human being 耶稣基督
firecracker /'faɪə,kreɪkə/ n.	small explosive that makes a loud noise 鞭炮
fireworks /'faɪəwɜːks/ n.	used in plural form; colorful explosives that are lit for holidays 焰火
descend /dɪ'send/ v.	come down 下降; 下来
overnight sensation	person who becomes famous in a very short time 一夜成名
stocking /'stɒkɪŋ/ n.	decorative “sock” that is hung up at Christmas 放礼物的圣诞长袜
Santa Claus	an imaginary old man with a white beard who wears a red suit and brings presents at Christmas time 圣诞老人
sleigh /sleɪ/ n.	large sled pulled by animals over snow 雪橇
reindeer /'reɪndɪə/ n.	large deer found in the far north 驯鹿
chimney /'tʃɪmni/ n.	brick opening that connects to the top of a fireplace and allows smoke to escape 烟囱
superstition /'sjuːpə'stɪʃən/ n.	irrational belief that a particular thing or behavior will bring good or bad luck 迷信
couplet /'kʌplɪt/ n.	two-lined poem 对联; 对偶体诗
prosperous /'prɒspərəs/ adj.	financially successful 兴隆的; 繁荣昌盛的

*On their way back to the hotel, Joy and her guests continue their conversation about holidays and associated customs.*

John: Joy, is Spring Festival the same as Chinese New Year?

Joy: Yes, it is. The first day of the Chinese lunar calendar is considered the first day of spring, so that's why it's called Spring Festival.



- Mark: Americans celebrate New Year's Day, too, but it's just a one-day holiday. Isn't Spring Festival the biggest holiday in China?
- Joy: Well, Spring Festival is the most important traditional holiday. We start getting ready for the holiday after the New Year's Day.
- Karen: We start getting ready for Christmas during Thanksgiving vacation at the end of November. The Friday after Thanksgiving is one of the biggest days to shop for Christmas presents.
- Mark: That's also the day when a lot of families start decorating their homes and putting up Christmas lights.
- Joy: Is Christmas the biggest holiday in the West?
- Karen: Oh, yes! I love the Christmas season. It's so beautiful to see all the Christmas lights at night. And we even have special Christmas music.
- John: My favorite Christmas activity is when our family decorates the Christmas tree.
- Joy: I've heard about that. What do you put on the tree?
- John: First, we string colored lights on the tree, and then we cover it with Christmas ornaments — colored glass balls, silver snowflakes, golden angels, tiny birds... Every ornament on our tree is different. When we are finished, the tree looks beautiful.
- Mark: I like making and decorating Christmas cookies — and eating them. Yum!
- Karen: My favorite activity is attending the candlelight Christmas Eve service at our church. We sing Christmas carols and hear the story of Jesus Christ's birth. That's the real meaning of Christmas.
- John: How do you celebrate Spring Festival, Joy?
- Joy: Like you do, we spend several weeks getting ready — buying gifts, decorating our homes, and preparing special foods and clothes. But the best part is the night before. Families gather together to make “jiaozi.” To make it, we roll out circles of dough, place a spoonful of meat or vegetable filling, fold it over and then boil or fry it. It's a lot of work, but it's fun to do it together.
- Karen: It sounds kind of like ravioli.\* What else do you do?
- Joy: We also eat “niangao,” a cake made of glutinous rice, which

symbolizes moving up or making progress in the new year. We stay up all night eating, talking, playing cards and watching the National Spring Festival Eve Party on television. At midnight you can hear huge strings of firecrackers going off.

Mark: We light off fireworks for New Year's Eve, too. And we also have a famous New Year's Eve Party in New York City every year. I usually turn on the TV right before midnight to watch the countdown and see the giant ball descend over Times Square.

Joy: In China, the CCTV's New Year's show is a very big deal. Almost everyone watches it. Sometimes, the people who perform on the show become overnight sensations!

John: We don't do anything like that on Christmas Eve. Instead of staying up all night, the children have to go to bed early — after they hang up their stockings, of course.

Joy: What are the stockings for?

John: They're for Santa Claus. According to the story, he comes at midnight in a flying sleigh pulled by reindeer. He lands on the rooftop, climbs down the chimney, and leaves small gifts in children's stockings — but only if they've been good boys and girls. And that means they have to be sleeping! But it's impossible to sleep because they can't wait to open their gifts the next morning.

Joy: It must be hard to sleep! Do children believe the story about Santa Claus?

John: I used to — until I was about seven years old. I was disappointed when I found out that Santa Claus wasn't real. Do you have beliefs like that for the Chinese New Year?

Joy: Yes, we have some superstitions — although people don't follow them so much anymore.

Karen: Like what?

Joy: Well, one taboo is sweeping. People don't sweep their houses on the Chinese New Year's Day because sweeping is associated with sweeping away wealth.

Mark: That's interesting. Are there any other taboos?

Joy: Breaking a tool also symbolizes losing wealth. So tradesmen and business people are very careful not to damage any equipment

during the first 15 days of the New Year.

John: What brings good luck?

Joy: We paint good wish couplets on strips of red paper and put one on each side of the door. That's supposed to bring good luck to everyone who passes through.

Karen: Isn't there something about red envelopes?

Joy: Oh, yes. After the New Year's feast, parents and grandparents give their children "lucky money" in red envelopes. Both the money and color red are supposed to bring good luck for the whole year.

Mark: How do you greet each other on the Chinese New Year's Day?

Joy: We say "Gongxi (Congratulations)" to each other and wish each other a healthy and prosperous new year.

( \* "Ravioli" is a square Italian pasta filled with meat or cheese. It is boiled and usually served with tomato sauce. )

#### B. Questions for Comprehension and Critical Thinking (综合理解和逻辑思考)

Pair up with another student and answer the following questions together. Then, discuss your answers with the whole class. Remember to take notes! The ideas from your class discussion may be useful for the writing exercises in the Unit Review.

1. What are the most important similarities and differences between Spring Festival and Christmas? Complete the chart below with your partner. Then list ideas from the class on the board.

	Spring Festival	Christmas
Similarities		
Differences		

2. What are some of the taboos associated with Chinese New Year? Does your family still follow any of these? Why or why not?
3. What are some similarities in the celebration of Chinese New Year and New Year's Eve (Dec 31st) in the U. S. ?

### C. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

Write the noun form for each of the seven verbs and three adjectives listed below. Then use the noun form to complete the sentences that follow.

VERB FORM →→ NOUN FORM

ADJECTIVE FORM →→ NOUN FORM

coordinate \_\_\_\_\_

prosperous \_\_\_\_\_

corrupt \_\_\_\_\_

superstitious \_\_\_\_\_

distribute \_\_\_\_\_

inferior \_\_\_\_\_

exhibit \_\_\_\_\_

banish \_\_\_\_\_

decorate \_\_\_\_\_

invest \_\_\_\_\_

1. After my family visited the \_\_\_\_\_ of new apartments, we decided that purchasing one would be a good \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ of mooncakes helped with the \_\_\_\_\_ of the rebellion.
3. Qu Yuan's \_\_\_\_\_ was the result of his attempts to fight against \_\_\_\_\_ in the government.
4. The Chinese have worked hard to reverse the old belief in the \_\_\_\_\_ of women.
5. At Christmas time, some Americans put large \_\_\_\_\_ (plural) such as angels or Santa Claus and his sleigh on their roofs.
6. One old \_\_\_\_\_ is that sweeping one's house on New Year's Day will sweep away \_\_\_\_\_ in the New Year.

## Part IV Intensive Reading (精读):

### Official and Traditional Holidays in China and the United States (中美两国的法定假日和传统节日)

#### A. Vocabulary and Text (词汇与课文)

stem /stem/ v.	to develop from 发源于;起因于
agricultural /ˌægrɪ'kʌltʃərəl/ adj.	related to farming 农业
crop /krɒp/ n.	plant grown by farmers for food 庄稼
harvest /'hɑːvɪst/ v. /n.	gather crops; crops that have been gathered 收获
Pilgrim /'pɪlgrɪm/ n.	early settler that came to America for religious freedom 最初移居美国的英国清教徒
Indian /'ɪndiən/ n.	original people groups native to North, South, and Central Americas 印第安人
native /'neɪtɪv/ adj. /n.	originally from specific place; person born in that place 当地的(人)
cranberry sauce	popular dish made from berries that is often served at Thanksgiving 酸果酱
founding /'faʊndɪŋ/ n.	the formal beginning of a business or an organization 成立;建立
veteran /'vetərən/ n.	person who has previously served in the military 退伍 军人
free of charge	at no cost to the person receiving an item or service 免费的
at first glance	the first time you notice or consider something 初看; 乍一看

Celebrations of holidays tell a great deal about the culture and people of a country. When visiting a foreign country, tourists enjoy observing and participating in the celebration of local holidays. They take pleasure in sampling traditional holiday foods, and are eager to learn about the history and legends behind those holidays.

Although each nation has its own unique holidays, many traditional and official holidays have similarities around the world. Often important traditional holidays stem from agricultural roots and mark the change of the seasons. For example, most cultures have a spring holiday, when new life is celebrated and crops are planted, and a fall holiday, when crops are harvested and winter preparations begin.

In China as well as most of Asia, the Chinese New Year marks the beginning of spring. To prepare for the holiday, people buy presents, clean and decorate their houses, and make special foods. On New Year's Eve, families in the northern part gather together to make jiaozi — boiled dumplings filled with meat and vegetables. Late at night in Southern China, many people visit the flower market for some last minute shopping. At midnight, firecrackers are set off everywhere. Many people stay up all night and watch the National Spring Festival Eve Party. On the Chinese New Year's Day, people wear new clothes. Children greet their parents and other elders in the family and receive lucky money wrapped in red paper. Neighbors go door-to-door to visit, exchange gifts, and wish each other a happy and prosperous new year.

In the United States, the fall holiday that celebrates the harvest is Thanksgiving. This holiday has historical roots dating back to the Pilgrims in 1621. When the Pilgrims first arrived in America, the local Indians helped them survive the winter by teaching them how to grow native plants: corn, beans, and pumpkins. The following fall, the Pilgrims invited the Indians to share a grand feast together to thank God for the good harvest. President Lincoln\* made Thanksgiving an official holiday in 1863. Today, families still gather together on the fourth Thursday of November to enjoy a feast featuring turkey, cranberry sauce, and pumpkin pie and to thank God for his blessings.

Like the traditional spring and harvest holidays, official holidays also have some similarities across cultures, at least on the surface. Nearly every country celebrates some kind of "National Day" on the anniversary of its founding. In addition, most countries have other special days to honor certain people such as veterans, former leaders, workers, parents, children, and those who have died. Tourists are often curious about these days. Although the themes of these holidays may seem similar, each holiday is unique.

Two important official holidays that are celebrated in China are International Women's Day and Children's Day. On International Women's Day, which is celebrated on March 8th, women employees are given a whole or half-day of paid vacation while the men have to go to work. Men show their

respect to women not only at work but also at home in various ways including doing all the housework on that day. On Children's Day, which is celebrated on June 1st, children all over China receive presents from their parents and are rewarded for good behavior and academic achievements by teachers and administrators of schools. Schools hold celebration parties, and children can visit cinemas, parks, and children's museums free of charge. Interestingly, neither of these holidays is celebrated in the U. S.

Two important holidays that are celebrated in the U. S. but not in China are Mother's Day and Father's Day. On Mother's Day, which falls on the second Sunday of May, people of all ages send or give cards, gifts, and flowers to their mothers. They call their mothers on the phone. If they live near their mothers, they take them out to lunch or dinner so that their mothers don't have to do any cooking. In fact, Mother's Day is the busiest day of the year for restaurants in the United States. On Father's Day, which is celebrated on the third Sunday in June, people honor their fathers and give them cards and gifts. For both holidays, children often make special art projects at school which they give as gifts to their parents.

What do these holidays show about the two cultures? At first glance, Americans might be surprised that the Chinese do not celebrate an official Mother's Day or Father's Day. After all, isn't respect for parents and elders one of the most important values in Chinese society? At the same time, the Chinese might be surprised that there is no Women's Day or Children's Day in America, where the Women's Liberation Movement\*\* began, and where children have many rights and protections. In fact, that is the whole point. The Chinese do not need a holiday for parents because they must show respect to their parents every day. Similarly, Americans don't need a holiday for women and children, but they do need to be reminded to be grateful to their parents. All these holidays reflect the deeper values of society. When tourists have the opportunity to experience and discuss various holidays in China, they learn more about the Chinese culture as well as their own.

( \* President Lincoln was the 16th President of the United States. He put an end to slavery, and as a result, had to guide the country through a bloody Civil War. He was assassinated on April 14, 1865 after the war was over. Today he is honored as one of the greatest leaders in American history.

\*\* Women's Liberation Movement: a political movement in the 60s and 70s for the purpose of giving women equal rights)

## B. Class Discussion (班级讨论)

Traditional Chinese Holidays	Official Chinese Holidays

First, copy the chart above onto the board. Then classify all the Chinese holidays that you are familiar with under either Traditional or Official. When your list on the board is complete, discuss the questions below:

1. What are the differences between traditional and official holidays? In your discussion, consider
  - a) the calendar used to set the date of the holiday,
  - b) the origin of the holiday, and
  - c) the purpose of the holiday.
2. Is one type of holiday more important than the other? Why or why not?
3. Discuss the values that are promoted by official holidays. Do traditional holidays promote the same values or different ones?

## C. Writing Exercises (写作练习)

1. Choose one official (modern) Chinese holiday and write a paragraph or short essay discussing the history and purpose of this holiday.
2. Choose one traditional Chinese holiday and write a paragraph or short essay explaining some of the practices associated with this holiday. Where do these practices come from and what do they mean? Is it important to continue these practices? Why or why not?
3. Write a paragraph or short essay in which you compare and contrast one Chinese holiday with one U. S. holiday. What do the similarities and differences show about the two cultures?



## Part V Reading Passage (泛读):

### Splendid China 5: The Charms of Sanya

#### (锦绣中华 5: 迷人的三亚)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

enchantment /ɪn'tʃɑ:ntmənt/ <i>n.</i>	the quality or state of being very pleasant or attractive 着迷; 喜悦
edge /edʒ/ <i>n.</i>	outside limit or boundary of a solid object, surface or area 边缘; 外围; 界线
generation /ˌdʒenə'reɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	single stage in a family history 一代
disapprove of agent /'eɪdʒənt/ <i>n.</i>	refuse to agree to; dislike 不赞成; 不喜欢 person who acts for, or manages the affairs of other people 代理人; 经纪人
chase /tʃeɪs/ <i>v.</i>	run after in order to capture somebody or something 追逐; 追赶
thunderstorm /'θʌndə'stɔ:m/ <i>n.</i>	a storm with thunder and lightning 雷阵雨
lightning bolt	flash of brilliant light in the sky produced by natural electricity 闪电; 霹雳
scatter /'skætə/ <i>v.</i>	move quickly in different directions 散开
symbol /'sɪmbəl/ <i>n.</i>	image, object, etc. that suggests or refers to something else 象征; 标志
festival /'festɪvəl/ <i>n.</i>	day or time of religious or other celebration 节日; 喜庆日
domestic /dəʊ'mestɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	of or inside a particular country 本国的; 国内的
newlyweds /'nju:lrɪwedz/ <i>n.</i>	a man and a woman who have recently married 新婚夫妇; 新婚者
participate in	join (in) 参加
declare /dɪ'kleə/ <i>v.</i>	formally announce; make known clearly 正式宣布; 表明

diving /'daɪvɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	a sport of swimming under water using special equipment to help people breathe 潜水;跳水
in addition	also; as well; besides 另外;加之
barbecue /'bɑːbɪkjʊː/ <i>n.</i>	outdoor party at which food is cooked over a metal frame or over an open fire and eaten 烧烤野餐
archery /'ɑːtʃəri/ <i>n.</i>	a sport in which people shoot arrows at a target using a bow 射箭术
coral reef	a line of hard rocks formed by coral, found in warm sea water that is not very deep 珊瑚礁
explore /ɪks'plɔː/ <i>v.</i>	travel into or through (a place) in order to learn about it 探险;考察
shade /ʃeɪd/ <i>n.</i>	an area that does not receive sunshine 荫;阴凉处
tropical /'trɒpɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	coming from or existing in the hottest parts of the world 热带的;炎热的
breeze /briːz/ <i>n.</i>	light wind 微风
resort /rɪ'zɔːt/ <i>n.</i>	popular holiday centre 度假胜地
crystal-clear /'krɪstəl'kliə/ <i>adj.</i>	completely clear and transparent like glass 透明似水晶的
visibility /ˌvɪzɪ'bɪləti/ <i>n.</i>	the quality or state of being visible 能见度
scuba diving	a sport of swimming under water while breathing through a tube that is connected to a container of air on one's back 用水肺潜水的运动
snorkeling /'snɔːklɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	a sport of swimming under water using a snorkel 用呼吸管潜水
magnificent /mæɡ'nɪfɪsənt/ <i>adj.</i>	splendid; remarkable; impressive 壮丽的;宏伟的;壮观的
sacred /'seɪkrɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	regarded with great respect 受崇敬的;不可冒犯的
symbolize /'sɪmbəlaɪz/ <i>v.</i>	represent or identify by a symbol 作为……象征

If you are so fortunate to be at the End of the Earth, you stand at the beginning of a journey of romance and enchantment. It's Tianya Haijiao, which translates to "The Edge of the Sky and The End of the Sea". On the beautiful island, 20 km west of Sanya city, this beach area has been for many generations a place for those who are in love or for those who love the ocean.

Rising over the beach are ancient rock formations. Cut into one rock is Chinese characters meaning “The Edge of the Sky” written by Chengzhe, the chief leader of Yazhou Prefecture in the Qing Dynasty. Another writing nearby reads: “The End of the Sea”. There is a tender love story behind the legend of these two stones.



In ancient times, two young lovers ran off when their parents disapproved of their marriage. Their parents sent agents to find and bring their children home. The agents had found them, and then chased them. Finally, the lovers had no escape as they faced the sea. Sad and without hope, they held each other dearly and then jumped into the sea. Then suddenly, there was a thunderstorm. Lightning bolts hit and changed them into the two stones that face each other; then, the agents had also been hit by lightning, and became the many smaller stones scattered nearby. People now look to the Tianya Haijiao stones as symbols of eternal and faithful love. The legend of Tianya Haijiao inspired a yearly event named the Tianyahaijiao International Wedding Festival in Sanya. Domestic and foreign newlyweds, and those who have married for several years, may participate in it to declare their love for each other.



From the End of the Earth, you can travel by boat, or travel 40 kilometres west of Sanya City along the Hainan West Expressway to see the Nanshan Cultural Tourism Zone. In the Nanshan Buddhism Cultural Park visitors can see places such as the Nanshan Temple, the Buddhism Landscape Garden, and the Tower Forests. Perhaps the most impressive is the Nanshan Gold and Jade Mother Buddha.

If you prefer more of the water, visit the West Island, as it is the number one destination in Hainan for diving and water sports. In addition, visitors can enjoy a salt-water pool, camping and barbecue, or archery. The West Island has a collection of sea life and coral reefs that divers can explore. If you just

want to relax, you can do so under the shade of the coconut trees, enjoy the tropical breeze, and taste the freshest of seafood at one of the island's restaurants. The West Island has something for everyone. You can get there by taking a 10 minute boat ride directly from Sanya Harbor.

If you get sea sick or can't travel by boat to the island, you may want to simply relax at the charming Yalong Bay Beach. Surrounded by four and five star hotels, Yalong Bay is the best beach in Sanya, Hainan Island, and, it is one of the best beach resorts in all of China. The water is crystal-clear, and it has a white sand beach. The sea water is so clear that visibility can reach 8 meters, making it ideal for scuba diving and snorkeling.

If you want to experience more of traditional Chinese stories of love and legend, take time to visit Luhuitou Park (Deer Looks Back). From the top of Luhuitou Park, the view of Sanya is magnificent. Local people of Sanya say that this romantic hill has been called Luhuitou and has become a sacred place for young people to express their love. The huge sculpture on the top of the hill symbolizes the romantic love story, which many have said gave the name of Sanya "Deer City".

#### B. Questions for Reading Comprehension (阅读理解题)

1. If you are fortunate enough to be at the End of the Earth, what does it symbolize?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. According to the legend, what do the two stones facing each other and the surrounding smaller stones represent?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What is perhaps the most impressive monument in the Nanshan Cultural Tourism Zone?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What does the author mean that "The West Island has something for everyone"?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What does Yalong Bay Beach have to offer?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Why is Sanya named Deer City?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Part VI Grammar Review (语法复习):

### Participles (分词)

#### A. Grammar Explanations (语法解释)

There are two kinds of participles in English: the present participle and the past participle. The present participle is formed by adding “-ing” to a verb and the past participle of regular verbs usually ends in “-ed”. Participle phrases are mainly used in writing in order to put a lot of information into one sentence. (英语中有两种分词:现在分词和过去分词。现在分词的形式是-ing, 规则动词的过去分词形式是-ed。分词主要用于书面语,使句子能包含更多的信息。)

#### 1. Difference between the present and past participles(现在分词和过去分词的区别)

The present participle is used in an active sense and indicates the action is in progress. The past participle is used in a passive sense and expresses past or completed action. (现在分词表示主动意义和动作正在进行。过去分词表示被动意义和动作已完成。)

Participle(分词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
Present participle (现在分词)	A. <u>Walking through Sherwood Forest at sunset</u> , we could feel an air of mystery. (在日落时穿越 Sherwood 森林,我们会有一种神秘感。) B. The Beijing Opera is <u>amazing</u> . (京剧美妙绝伦。)
Past participle (过去分词)	C. <u>Invented by an Indiana housewife in 1889</u> , the first dishwasher was driven by a steam engine. (第一台洗碗机由蒸汽机驱动,1889年由印第安纳州的一个家庭主妇发明的。) D. I am <u>amazed</u> by the Beijing Opera. (我被京剧所震撼。)

#### Notes (注解)

- In sentence A, the present participle phrase “Walking through Sherwood Forest at sunset” is an action performed by the subject “we” and it is an action in progress in relation to the time of the verb “could feel”. (现在分词词组 Walking through Sherwood Forest at sunset 除表达了 we 就是此动作的执行者的主动意义,还表达了此动作正在进行之意。)

Walking through Sherwood Forest at sunset, we could feel an air of mystery.

= When we were walking through Sherwood Forest at sunset, we could feel an air of mystery.

- In Sentence C, the past participle phrase “Invented by an Indiana housewife in 1889,” is a passive and past action of the subject “the first dishwasher”. (过去分词词组 Invented by an Indiana housewife in 1889 既表达了此动作是主语 the first dishwasher 承受者的被动含义,又表达了此动作已完成之意,相等于 when 引导的状语从句。)

Invented by an Indiana housewife in 1889, the first dishwasher was driven by a steam engine. = When it (the first dishwasher) was invented by an Indiana housewife in 1889, the first dishwasher was driven by a steam engine.

- We use the present participle to describe what has caused the feelings, as in B. We use the past participle to describe how we feel, as in D. (我们用现在分词描述激起我们情感的事物如 B 句;用过去分词描述我们的感受如 D 句。)

## 2. Function of participles (分词的功能)

Participle is a form of a verb in English. It can function as a verbal adjective or adverb. It can be used as attribute, predicative, adverbial and object complement in a sentence. (分词短语作为动词非谓语形式,主要起相当于形容词或副词的作用,在句子中可作定语、表语、状语或宾语补语等。)

Function (功能)	Sample Sentence (例句)
attribute (定语)	A. Barking dogs seldom bite. (吠犬不咬) B. Don't cry over split milk. (覆水难收)
predicative (表语)	C. The book is interesting. (这本书很有趣。) D. Mary is <u>interested</u> in the book. (玛丽对这本书感兴趣。)
adverbial (状语)	E. He came <u>running</u> into the room. (他跑进房间。) F. <u>Not knowing</u> your phone number, I wasn't able to contact you. (由于不知道你的电话号码,我无法联系你。) G. <u>Viewed from a distance</u> , the hill looks like a rabbit. (远远看去,这座山像一只兔子。) H. The president entered the airport, <u>surrounded by a group of reporters</u> . (总统进入机场,被一群记者包围了起来。)
object complement (宾语补语)	I. They <u>watched the sun setting behind the hill</u> . (他们看着太阳落到小山背后。) J. I'm going to <u>have the photos printed</u> . (我要去印这些照片。)

## Notes (注解)

- A present participle modifies a noun that affects someone or something else. As an adjective, a past participle modifies a noun that is affected by someone or

something else. (现在分词作定语或表语时与其所修饰的名词是主动关系。过去分词与其修饰的名词是被动关系。)

- A participle or participle phrase can be used to shorten or combine adverb clauses that have the same subject. The present participle is used for active clauses, which is the action done by the subject. The past participle is used for passive clauses, which is the action done to the subject. The less important part becomes the participle clause and important information should always be in the main clause. (分词或分词短语可用来简化或连接状语从句,其逻辑主语通常就是主句的主语。主句的主语如是分词动作的执行者要用现在分词,主句的主语如是分词动作的承受者则用过去分词。修饰或起陪衬作用的动作转化为分词,包含重要信息的部分为主句。)

He came running into the room.

= He came and ran into the room

Not knowing your phone number, I wasn't able to contact you.

= As I didn't know your phone number, I wasn't able to contact you.

Viewed from a distance, the hill looks like a rabbit.

= When it is viewed from a distance, the hill looks like a rabbit.

The president entered the airport, surrounded by a group of reporters.

= When the president entered the airport, he was surrounded by a group of reporters.

- To make a negative, we put "not" in front of the participle, as in F. (分词的否定形式是将 not 放在分词前如 F 句。)
- A participle can also be used as the object complement after verbs of senses such as "see, hear, watch, smell, notice, find, and feel" or other verbs like "have, get". A present participle is used if the action is done by the object as in I., and a past participle is used if an action is done to the object, as in J. (分词还可以在感官动词 see, hear, watch, notice, find, feel, 或使役动词 have, get 等后面作宾语补语。宾语如是分词动作的执行者需用现在分词如 I 句,宾语如是分词动作的承受者则用过去分词如 J 句。)

### 3. The present perfect participle (现在分词完成式)

The present perfect participle mainly functions as an adverb. (现在分词完成式主要用作状语。)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
the present perfect participle (现在分词完成式)	<p>A. <u>Having bought a bike</u>, she cycled home. (买了自行车后,她骑车回家。)</p> <p>B. <u>Having lived there for such a long time</u>, he didn't want to move to another town. (在那小镇已住了很长时间,他不想搬到别处去。)</p> <p>C. <u>Not having ever been to Tibet</u>, John has a strong desire to go there. (约翰从未去过西藏,所以他非常渴望到那儿去。)</p>
the present perfect participle in the passive form (现在分词完成被动式)	<p>D. <u>Having been told</u> that some guests were coming, they got the rooms ready. (被告知有客人要来,他们将房间准备好了。)</p> <p>E. <u>Having been defeated</u> three times in a row, the boxer decided to give up fighting. (接连被打倒了三次后,那位拳击手决定放弃比赛。)</p>

### Notes (注解)

- The present perfect participle is used in the active form with “(not) having + past participle” if: (现在分词完成式的形式为“(not) having + 过去分词”,常用于以下情况:)  
 (1) the action is done by the subject. (分词的逻辑主语是分词行为的执行者。)  
 (2) the action is completed before the action described in the main clause as in A. Or the action has been going on for a period of time when the action in the main clause starts, as in B. (当现在分词所表示的动作发生在谓语动词所表示的动作前如 A 句;当现在分词所表示的动作在主句谓语动作前已进行了一段时间如 B 句。)  
 Having bought a bike, she cycled it home.  
 = After she had bought a bike, she cycled it home.  
 Having lived there for such a long time, he didn't want to move to another town.  
 = He had been living there for such a long time that he didn't want to move to another town.
- The present perfect participle is used in the passive form with “(not) having been + past participle” if the action is done to the subject, not by the subject, as in D. and E. (现在分词完成被动形式为“[not] having been + 过去分词”。如果分词的逻辑主语是分词动作的承受者,动作又发生在主句谓语动词所表示的动作之前,就要用完成被动形式如 D 和 E 句。)



Having been told that some guests were coming, they got the rooms ready.

= After they have been told that some guests were coming, they got the rooms ready.

Having been defeated three times in a row, the boxer decided to give up fighting.

= After he had been defeated three times in a row, the boxer decided to give up fighting.

#### 4. Participle with different subjects (分词独立结构)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
the present form (一般式)	A. <u>My travel agent being absent</u> , his associate helped me arrange my vacation plans. (我的旅游代理人不在, 他的助手帮我安排了旅游计划。)
the perfect form (完成式)	B. <u>All the people in the tour group having arrived</u> , the bus was ready to leave. (旅游团队所有人已到, 汽车准备出发。) C. <u>The deal having been closed</u> , we threw a party to celebrate it. (协议签好后, 我们举行庆祝宴会。)

#### Note (注解)

- Sometimes participle phrases can be used even if the participle and the main clause do not have the same subject. In this case, the participle needs to have its own subject. (分词或分词短语作状语时, 有时候其逻辑的主语并不是主句的主语, 这时分词就要有自己的主语, 这种结构称为分词独立结构。)

My travel agent being absent, his associate helped me arrange my vacation plans.

= As my travel agent was absent, his associate helped me arrange my vacation plans.

All the people in the tour group having arrived, the bus was ready to leave.

= After all the people in the tour group (had) arrived, the bus was ready to leave.

The deal having been closed, we threw a party to celebrate it.

= After the deal had been closed, we threw a party to celebrate it.

#### B. Grammar Exercises (语法练习)

##### 1. Choose the right participle to complete the following phrases.

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ (encouraging/encouraged) advice

(2) \_\_\_\_\_ (losing/lost) luggage

- (3) a \_\_\_\_\_ (packing/packed) bag
- (4) a \_\_\_\_\_ (breaking/broken) cup
- (5) a \_\_\_\_\_ (closing/closed) door
- (6) a \_\_\_\_\_ (crowding/crowded) street
- (7) a \_\_\_\_\_ (furnishing/furnished) room
- (8) a \_\_\_\_\_ (signing/signed) contract
- (9) a \_\_\_\_\_ (touching/touched) moment
- (10) a \_\_\_\_\_ (standing/stood) invitation
- (11) an \_\_\_\_\_ (unexpected/unexpected) event
- (12) an \_\_\_\_\_ (uninviting/uninvited) guest
- (13) an \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting/interested) movie

2. Choose the right participle to complete the sentence.

- (1) I need to have the car \_\_\_\_\_ (washing/washed).
- (2) Did you hear somebody \_\_\_\_\_ (knocking/knocked) at the door?
- (3) Is there anything worth \_\_\_\_\_ (seeing/seen) in this part of the city?
- (4) I am going to have my dinner \_\_\_\_\_ (delivering/delivered) to the room.
- (5) Our tour guide knows so much about the city. She is \_\_\_\_\_ (amazing/amazed).
- (6) I was \_\_\_\_\_ (disappointing/disappointed) when I found out that Santa Claus wasn't real.
- (7) A man \_\_\_\_\_ (naming/named) Zhu Yuanzhang used mooncakes to organize a rebellion.
- (8) It's \_\_\_\_\_ (surprising/surprised) that we don't have Mother's Day or Father's Day in China.
- (9) On New Year's Eve, you can hear huge strings of firecrackers \_\_\_\_\_ (going/gone) off.
- (10) Children receive lucky money \_\_\_\_\_ (wrapping/wrapped) in red paper on New Year's Eve.
- (11) A \_\_\_\_\_ (connecting/connected) flight requires a passenger to change from one plane to another.
- (12) When my family gathers together, we make jiaozi, dumplings \_\_\_\_\_ (filling/filled) with meat and vegetables.
- (13) On International Women's Day, women employees are given a whole or half-day of \_\_\_\_\_ (paying/paid) vacation.

- (14) If you lose something at an airport, you should check at the airport's \_\_\_\_\_ (losing-and-finding/lost-and-found) office.
- (15) \_\_\_\_\_ (Founding/Founded) in 1630, Boston is one of the oldest and most culturally significant cities in the United States.
- (16) \_\_\_\_\_ (Looking/Looked) down the hill from the Luhuitou Park, you can see all of Sanya.
- (17) Did you hear a \_\_\_\_\_ (frightening/frightened) sound last night?
- (18) Jane felt \_\_\_\_\_ (frightening/frightened) as she walked alone in this park at night.
- (19) The tombs \_\_\_\_\_ (having closed/having been closed) early that day, we decided to visit the lake instead.
- (20) I can book the tickets and have them \_\_\_\_\_ (delivering/delivered) to the hotel reception desk for you.

3. Combine or change the following sentence, using the underlined one as a participle phrase.

Example:

Since I had a cold, I didn't go to the museum yesterday.

→ Having a cold, I didn't go to the museum yesterday.

- (1) The girl who serves at the counter is very helpful.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (2) We slept well. The bed in our room is very comfortable.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (3) Joy has been to Beijing several times. She knows the city pretty well.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (4) As the ticket office was closed, I couldn't buy plane tickets last night.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (5) After he had drunk too much at the party, Jack didn't drive home himself.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (6) I always get great deals on hotels because my friend is a travel agent.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (7) When you arrive in a new country, you often have to go through customs at the airport.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (8) Many people stay up all night and watch the National Spring Festival Eve Party on TV.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (9) San Diego is a coastal southern California city. It is located in the southwestern corner of the state.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (10) They have not made good preparations, so they decided to postpone the trip till next week.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (11) Denver is home to many nationally recognized museums. They include the Denver Art Museum, the second largest performing arts center in the nation.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

- (12) San Diego is often perceived as the most conservative big city in California.  
San Diego has a strong military presence with the United States Navy.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

4. Read the following passage, underline all the participles and then explain what function the participle serves.

In the State of Chu during the Warring States period, around 400 — 200 B. C., there lived a great poet and statesman named Qu Yuan. Fed up with the corruption in the government, he began to criticize the king and demand changes. Unfortunately, he was banished from the kingdom. For many years he wandered the countryside, writing poems about his patriotism and love for the people. In 278 B. C., the capital of the State of Chu was captured by the rival State of Qin. Filled with despair at the loss of his beloved state, Qu Yuan jumped into the Miluo River holding a huge rock in his arms. The local fisherman tried to save him. They paddled up and down the river looking for him, banging their paddles on the water to distract the hungry fish.

5. Read the following passage and change those sentences marked with numbers (1—5) into sentences containing participle or participle phrases.

1) While we're riding on the bus today, I'd like to tell you about the traditions behind two of my favorite holidays: Mid-Autumn Festival and Dragon Boat Festival.

Today Mid-Autumn Festival is one of the most important traditional holidays in China. On that night, the moon is the fullest and most beautiful. Families gather together in the evening to gaze at the moon and feast on tea, wine and mooncakes — delicious sweet pastries imprinted with symbols and Chinese characters on the outer crust. 2) Inside is a rich filling that sometimes contains a whole egg yolk for good

luck. 3) We also eat fruit, especially round fruit that resembles the full moon. 4) When we look at the moon, we think of our loved ones who are in other parts of the world, and we know that they are looking at the same moon and thinking of us.

My other favorite holiday is Dragon Boat Festival. It is celebrated in the spring on “Double Fifth Day,” the fifth day of the fifth month of the Chinese calendar. On this day, people eat “zhongzi”—steamed glutinous rice wrapped in bamboo leaves. 5) They also watch rowing races, which are held on lakes and rivers. The boats are beautifully decorated with colorful dragons. This is one of my favorite holidays because of the story behind it.

## Part VII Unit Review Exercises (单元综合练习)

### A. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

Exercise 1. Which words are associated with which holidays? Write the words in the appropriate box. Some words can be written in more than one box.

pumpkin pie	crust	taboo	despair
Santa Claus	carols	envelope	legend
secret messages	row	investments	banished
spur the economy	harvest	Pilgrims	exhibition
reindeer	paddle	ornaments	couplets
family vacation	firecrackers	turkey	Indians
overnight sensation	angel	founding	yolk

1. Spring Festival	2. Thanksgiving	3. Mid-Autumn Festival
4. Christmas	5. National Day	6. Dragon Boat Festival

Exercise 2. Choose the right word to complete the sentences below. Some words can be used in more than one sentences.

1. Sometimes a person who performs in the New Year's Eve show becomes an (overnight sensation /exhibition ).
2. People decorate Christmas trees with ( reindeer/ornaments ) and sing ( carols/angels ).
3. At the first Thanksgiving , the Pilgrims and ( Indians / Santa Claus ) thanked God for the ( harvest/turkey ).
4. To celebrate the New Year, people light strings of ( secret messages/firecrackers ).
5. National Day celebrates the ( legend/founding ) of the People's Republic of China.
6. Both Mid-Autumn Festival and Dragon Boat Festival have interesting ( taboos/legends ) behind them.
7. Good luck ( couplets/envelopes ) are hung on both sides of doorways.
8. The government gives people a week off for ( National Day/Dragon Boat Festival ) in order to ( row the boats/spur the economy ).

#### B. Dictation ( 听写 )

First, listen to the entire paragraph to understand the main idea. Then listen to each sentence carefully and write down exactly what you hear on a separate piece of paper. Finally, listen to the whole paragraph one more time to check your sentences.

#### C. Sentence combination ( 句子组合 )

One way to add more information to a sentence is to use participial phrases to modify nouns. These phrases usually follow the noun that they modify. However, if the phrase describes the subject of the sentence, it can come before the noun and start the sentence.

Example :

1. Qu Yuan was fed up with the corruption. He began to criticize the king.  
→ Fed up with the corruption, Qu Yuan began to criticize the king.
2. We are gazing at the moon. We think of our loved ones who are looking at the same moon.  
→ Gazing at the moon, we think of our loved ones who are looking at the same moon.

**NOTE:** It's easy to confuse present participial phrases with gerund subjects because both come at the beginning of the sentence and both start with +ing words. Compare these two sentences:

A. *Gazing at the moon, I remember the stories I learned as a child.*

B. *Gazing at the moon reminds me of stories I learned as a child.*

In the first sentence, “gazing at the moon” describes the subject.

In the second sentence, “gazing at the moon” **IS** the subject.

Exercise 1. Combine the sentences by making the first sentence into a participial phrase that modifies the subject of the second sentence.

1. The children were exhausted from a busy day. They fell asleep on the way home.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I am standing in the doorway. I can smell the delicious holiday food.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Qu Yuan was banished from the kingdom. He wandered the countryside for many years.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Mid-Autumn Festival is celebrated on the 15th day of the 8th month. It is one of the most important holidays in China.  
\_\_\_\_\_

Exercise 2. The sentences below are incorrect because the participial phrases don’t modify the *subject* of the sentence. This error is called a “dangling participle.” Rewrite these sentences so that the participial phrase modifies the subject.

**EXAMPLE:**

**INCORRECT:** Wrapped in a red envelope, children receive money for good luck.  
(Are children wrapped in a red envelope???)

**CORRECT:** Wrapped in a red envelope, money is given to children for good luck.

1. Paddling up and down the river, it was impossible to save Qu Yuan.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Celebrated on the fifth day of the fifth month of the Chinese calendar, I love Dragon Boat Festival.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Decorated with colorful dragons, we watched the boats race across the lake.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Imprinted with secret messages, they quickly distributed the mooncakes.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**D. Translation (翻译)****1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.**

(1) Mother's Day and Father's Day remind us of how important our parents are.

---

(2) When people aren't working, they always spend more money.

---

(3) Respecting elders is a fundamental value of Chinese society.

---

(4) The local Indians helped the Pilgrims survive their first winter by teaching them how to grow native plants such as corn.

---

(5) It's hard for children to go to sleep on Christmas Eve because they are so excited about opening their presents the next day.

---

**2. Translate the following sentences into English.**

(1) 在美国,母亲节是餐馆一年中生意最忙的一天。

---

(2) 在屈原投江纪念日,米饭团被扔进江中以防鱼儿咬食屈原的尸体。

---

(3) 我们彻夜不眠,吃喝,谈笑,打牌,观赏春晚联欢会的电视播出。

---

(4) 月饼内含有象征好运蛋黄的美味馅料。

---

(5) 儿童节,孩子们可以免费上电影院,公园和参观儿童博物馆。

---



# Unit 6

## Traditional Transportation (传统交通工具)

In this Unit, Joy familiarizes her group with some of the different kinds of transportation commonly used by the people of China. The tour group learns about the growing use of the pedicab in tourism.

## Part I Introduction (介绍):

### Getting Started (入门练习)

#### A. Warm-up Exercises (预习)

The people of China use many forms of transportation today. Some are very modern. Others are from years past, or resemble ancient forms of transportation. Do you know what these modes of transportation are called?

1. Match the picture with the English name.



A



B



C



D



E



F



G

Write the letter of the picture in the blank.

- |                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| (1) Junk _____          | (5) pedicab _____          |
| (2) Bicycle cart _____  | (6) donkey cart _____      |
| (3) rickshaw _____      | (7) animal skin raft _____ |
| (4) <i>sampan</i> _____ |                            |

2. In the forms of transportation above, which one do you think is the newest?  
Which one is the oldest?  
The newest \_\_\_\_\_. The oldest \_\_\_\_\_.

#### B. Joy's Introductory Speech (林欢的开场白)

As the bus makes its way to The Great Wall, Joy tells the group about various modes of transportation in China, some of which they might see on the way.

## Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

rickshaw /'rɪkʃəʊ/ <i>n.</i>	a small, two-wheeled cart like passenger vehicle with a fold-down top, pulled by one person, formerly used widely in Japan and China 人力车
interchangeably /ɪntə'tʃeɪndʒəblɪ/ <i>adv.</i>	the ability to switch things that can be used in the same way 可互换的
migrate /maɪ'greɪt/ <i>v.</i>	move from one area to another 移居; 迁移
degrading /dɪ'greɪdɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	shameful, undignified 堕落的; 低级的
misery /'mɪzəri/ <i>n.</i>	the condition of extreme sadness, unhappiness 凄惨
junk /dʒʌŋk/ <i>n.</i>	a kind of Chinese ship used since ancient times, having two to four sails and used to carry cargo 平底帆船
cargo /'kɑːɡəʊ/ <i>n.</i>	goods carried on a ship or plane 货物
sampan /'sæmpən/ <i>n.</i>	舢板
undoubtedly /ʌn'daʊtɪdli/ <i>adv.</i>	definitely cannot be disputed 毫无疑问的
outnumber /aʊt'nʌmbə/ <i>v.</i>	be greater in number 数量上胜过

“As we were leaving the hotel, you might have noticed some pedicabs on the street. The terms rickshaw and pedicab are often used interchangeably by foreigners in China, but they are different kinds of transportation means; one of them no longer exists in modern China. The rickshaw, which is pulled by a human on foot, first appeared in Japan in the late 1800s. A few years later, it was used in China. Pulling a rickshaw was often the first job for peasants migrating to the city. In the 1920s, Shanghai had about 100,000 rickshaws. However, after 1949, rickshaws were outlawed because they were thought to be degrading. Lao She's famous story, *Rickshaw Boy*, describes the misery of those who worked in this job. The rickshaw has been replaced by the pedicab, which is a small two-wheeled cart for passengers pulled by a rider on an attached bicycle. The pedicab in the late 70s and early 80s was used only for tourists.

“In rural areas, many day laborers use a rickshaw-like cart to transport materials and products. Certainly motorcycles and trucks are used by many in

the country as well, but people still use carts pulled by donkeys, horses, mules, or even dogs. They might also use human-drawn wagons or carts, or a kind of pedicab cart (a flat-bed cart). In the very north desert region, camels are quite common as a means of transportation for people and goods.

“Although we will not be around rivers or lakes today, later in our tour we will see some traditional water transportation. The Chinese *junk* is a kind of ship first used in the 4th Century B. C. They can have two to four sails, and they are still used today to carry cargo mostly on the Yangtze River. In many rivers and lakes, you can see *sampans*. A *sampan* is a kind of traditional Chinese houseboat. *Sampans* are popular in southern China. Traditionally, they are used by fishermen who live with their families and work from their boats. Another kind of water transportation is a raft. In the western provinces of Ningxia, Qinghai and Gansu, some people use animal skin rafts as ferries to cross the Yellow River and other rivers.

“You undoubtedly noticed the bicycle traffic as we made our way through the streets in our bus this morning. There are literally hundreds of thousands of bikes on the road in rush hour. In China, bikes are so essential in daily life that it is rare for anyone not to know how to ride one. Bicycles provide the basic means of transportation for the average person in China, providing a way to get to work, go shopping, enjoy leisure activities and get children to school. Today, in most places, bicycles outnumber cars by about ten to one.”



Professor Weiping Kong (Second row on the left), her family and her American colleagues and friends on a Yangtze River Tour in a small manpowered boat

### C. Listening for the Main Idea (泛听)

1. What areas does Joy discuss in her speech about transportation?
2. What is the difference between a rickshaw and a pedicab?

3. Why is it unusual for a Chinese person not to know how to ride a bicycle?

#### D. Filling in the Blanks ( 填空 )

Now listen to Joy's speech again and fill in the blanks.

"As we were leaving the hotel, you might have noticed some pedicabs on the street. The terms (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and pedicab are often used interchangeably by foreigners in China, but they are different kinds of transportation means; one of them no longer (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in modern China. The rickshaw, which is pulled by a human on foot, first appeared in Japan in the late 1800s. A few years later, it was used in China. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a rickshaw was often the first job for peasants migrating to the city. In the 1920s, Shanghai had about 100,000 rickshaws. However, after 1949, rickshaws were outlawed because they were thought to be degrading. Lao She's famous story, *Rickshaw Boy*, describes the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ of those who worked in this job. The rickshaw has been replaced by the pedicab, which is a small two-wheeled cart for passengers pulled by a rider on an attached bicycle. The pedicab in the late 70s and early 80s was used (5) \_\_\_\_\_ for tourists.

"In rural areas, many day laborers use a rickshaw-like cart to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ materials and produce. Certainly motorcycles and trucks are used by many in the country as well, but people still use carts pulled by donkeys, horses, mules, or even dogs. They might also use human-drawn wagons or carts, or a kind of pedicab cart (a flat-bed cart). In the very north desert region, camels are quite common as a means of transportation for people and goods.

"Although we will not be around rivers or lakes today, later in our tour we will see some traditional water (7) \_\_\_\_\_. The Chinese *junk* is a kind of ship first used in the 4th Century B. C. They can have two to four sails, and they are still used today to carry (8) \_\_\_\_\_ mostly on the Yangtze River. In many rivers and lakes, you can see *sampans*. A *sampan* is a kind of (9) \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese houseboat. *Sampans* are popular in southern China. Traditionally, they are used by fishermen who live with their families and work from their boats. Another kind of water transportation is a raft. In the western provinces of Ningxia, Qinghai and Gansu, some people use animal skin rafts as ferries to cross the Yellow River and other rivers.

"You undoubtedly noticed the bicycle traffic as we made our way through the streets in our bus this morning. There are (10) \_\_\_\_\_ hundreds of thousands of bikes on the road in rush hour. In China, bikes are so (11) \_\_\_\_\_ in people's life that it is rare for anyone not to know how to ride one. Bicycles provide

the basic means of transportation to the average person in China providing a way to get to work, go shopping, enjoy (12) \_\_\_\_\_ activities and get children to school. Today, in most places, bicycles outnumber cars by about ten to one.”

### E. Listening for Details (精听)

1. Name the modes of transportation mentioned by Joy.
2. Why is the rickshaw no longer used in China.
3. What novel written by Lao She does Joy mention in her speech? Why does she refer to this novel?
4. What is the main purpose of a pedicab?
5. How is a *junk* different from a *sampan*?

## Part II Conversation 1 (对话1): Pedicab Tours (三轮车游)

### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

peeping Tom	someone who secretly watches a person, usually by looking in a window 偷窥
good shape	having a healthy and athletic appearance 健康的身材
going rate	the current cost to rent or use something for a certain time 现价; 市价
buddy /'bʌdi/ n.	a companion, partner, or pal 伙伴
“green” /grɪn/ adj.	environmentally friendly, does not harm the environment “绿色”
franchise /'fræntʃaɪz/ n.	a business that is licensed to sell the goods or services of a parent company 连锁店; 加盟店

*Joy talks about the use of pedicabs in major Chinese cities. The group has just returned from the Hutong tour.*

Joy: How was your Hutong tour?

Susan: It was fantastic! I really feel like I've gotten to know traditional China and “real” Chinese people!

Joy: (*laughing*) Well, we are all “real” Chinese people!

- Rick: I felt a little bit like a “peeping Tom” stopping and looking into people’s homes.
- Joy: Don’t worry, Rick. They are happy to see visitors who are interested in the lives of the people in the Hutong.
- David: I can’t believe what good shape those drivers are in! I guess they never worry about gaining weight.
- Joy: That’s true. And they are not just keeping in shape. They are preserving part of China’s charm. And when tourists use pedicabs, they are helping more people stay in business, too.
- David: Well, that brings me to another question. It was really fun taking a tour in a pedicab. Is it okay if we take a tour on our own?
- Joy: Absolutely. Feel free to use the pedicabs you see for hire around tourist attractions like Tianamen Square or Lao She Tea House.
- Rick: What about those motorized pedicabs I’ve seen on the street?
- Joy: Those are often used by local Chinese because they are cheaper than a taxi and pretty fast. However, they are often not licensed, and not good for the environment. My advice is to use the tourist pedicabs.
- Susan: That makes sense. What’s the going rate for a pedicab ride?
- Joy: Well, that depends on where you want to go, of course. A short tour is quite affordable.
- Susan: Do the drivers have a price list, or do we need to use our bargaining skills?
- Joy: No, there’s no price list. So you should negotiate the price before you go on the ride. And be sure to agree on the currency you want to use.
- Rick: Is it safe to get in any pedicab around the tourist areas?
- Joy: Hiring a pedicab in a tourist area is relatively safe. But as always, tourists must be careful. It’s a good idea to stay with a buddy or in a group.
- David: Wow, good exercise, “green” transportation, helping the economy ... I think I’ll start a pedicab business at home!
- Rick: That’s not really a new idea, David. Pedicabs have become very popular in tourist areas all over the world, including the U. S.
- Joy: Yes, it is actually becoming a big business here in China, too. Last year, some tourist firms in the Shichahai Lake area started a business

that franchises pedicabs.

David: Great idea! Has it helped the area?

Joy: Absolutely. The drivers are well trained, and they offer a good service to our tourists.

Susan: I'm ready for another pedicab ride!

### B. Comprehension (综合理解)

1. Why does Rick feel like a “peeping Tom”?
2. Why is it good to use pedicabs?
3. What are some reasons tourists should avoid motorized pedicabs?
4. What is Joy's advice for hiring a pedicab “on your own”?
5. Where can someone find a pedicab to hire?

### C. Speaking Activities (口语练习)

For the following speaking activities, form groups of four.

1. Practice the conversation with classmates. Try to use some of your own vocabulary to express the same ideas.
2. Now divide your group of four into two pairs. In each of these pairs, pretend you are tourists and you want to take a pedicab tour on your own. Discuss what you want to do, and what Joy told you about pedicab rides. Add four more exchanges to the beginning dialogue.

Tourist 1: I think it would be great fun to take a short pedicab ride after dinner.

Tourist 2: Where should we go?

Tourist 1:

Tourist 2:

Tourist 1:

Tourist 2:

Tourist 1:

Tourist 2:

Practice your dialogue until you know it by heart. Then perform it for the other pair.



## Part III Conversation 2 (对话2): Bicycle Fun (骑自行车的乐趣)

### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

be into	have great interest in sth. such as an activity or hobby 热衷于
defensively /dɪ'fensɪvli/ adv.	watching out for others with suspicion that they might do something wrong 防卫
rule of thumb	the general way something is done 常规
right of way	the rule that allows a person or a vehicle to go in front of the other 行驶权
yield /ji:ld/ v.	give way to; wait for someone else before proceeding 让路

Nick: You know, Joy, I'm really into exercising ...

Mike: (*Mike interrupts*) Yeah, me, too. (*Pats stomach*) I've gained a few Chinese pounds! Other than walking, we haven't been exercising much.

Nick: Exactly. And I love bike riding. Is it possible to rent a bicycle?

Joy: Yes, it is, but you should definitely stay around tourist areas like the Summer Palace or Tianamen Square if you're in Beijing.

Meg: What about parks? Can we ride bicycles in parks?

Joy: Yes, that would be a great place for a safe ride. Or in residential areas. Any place that is away from the busy main streets is fine.

Mike: So, where can we find bike rentals?

Joy: Many of the major cities where we are staying have bicycle rentals in large repair shops, or in major hotels. One exception is Shanghai.

Nick: Great! I could use a couple of hours of bike riding!

Joy: Just remember to avoid the morning and evening rush hours and stay away from the downtown area of any city.

Nick: About how much does it cost to rent a bike?

Joy: Not much. It's quite reasonable and a lot of fun!

- Mike: And rules. Are there any laws we should be aware of?
- Joy: Well, as in the U. S., everyone drives on the right hand side of the road. Where bike lanes are available, of course you should use them. In big cities, there are bike lanes on major roads, but in narrow streets, there might not be any. Of course, be on the lookout for pedestrians. They can cross the street any place at any time.
- Meg: How about helmets? Can we rent helmets?
- Joy: They will be hard to find and very expensive to rent. I think if you stay in the tourist areas you will be O.K. if you remember to ride defensively.
- Nick: Just like driving a car in the U. S. !
- Mike: What about the buses and trucks. They seem to get so close to bicycles!
- Joy: Drivers in China are used to bicycles, but the basic rule of thumb is the biggest vehicle on the road has the right of way. So always yield to buses, cars, and trucks.
- Meg: And traffic lights? Are they the same as the U. S. ?
- Joy: Almost. A red light requires you to stop behind the white line, and green lights mean you can go. A yellow light before a red means to get ready to stop, like in the U. S. However, here in China, we also have a yellow light *before* the green light.
- Meg: That's different! What does it mean?
- Joy: Non-motorized vehicles can start crossing, but motorized vehicles must wait for the green light before they move.
- Mike: That makes sense. Since there are so many bikes, they need more time to get started. How considerate!
- Nick: O.K., who wants to include bike riding in their China vacation adventure?
- Mike: Sounds great to me!
- Meg: Uh. Can I ride on the back of your bike, Nick?

### B. Questions for Comprehension and Critical Thinking (综合理解和逻辑思考)

For numbers 1—6, listen to the conversation again and decide if the statement is True or False. If it is True, write T. If it is False, write F and re-write the statement to make it true in the spaces provided below.

1. \_\_\_\_ Mike thinks he is getting fat in China.
  2. \_\_\_\_ Residential areas are not good places to ride a bicycle.
  3. \_\_\_\_ Bicycle rentals are very expensive.
  4. \_\_\_\_ Buses, cars, and trucks usually have the right of way.
  5. \_\_\_\_ The signal lights in China are exactly the same as the signal lights in the United States.
  6. \_\_\_\_ Meg doesn't feel confident to ride a bicycle by herself.
- (Rewrite False statements to make them True here.)

---



---

(For numbers 7—10, respond with short answers.)

7. In Joy's opinion, where are good places for tourists to ride bicycles?
8. How is riding a bicycle in China like driving a car in the U. S. ?
9. Discuss the problems a tourist might encounter when riding a bicycle in China.
10. Why is there a yellow light before a green light in China but not in the United States?

### C. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

#### Using Quotation Marks

In writing, quotation marks are commonly used to indicate (1) direct speech and (2) quoted text, including proverbs or well-known expressions.

- 1) Mike told Nick, "I've gained a few Chinese pounds!"
- 2) According to the brochure I read last night, "The Great Wall is one of the most popular tourist sites in the world."

Quotation marks can also be used to show that a word or phrase is being given a different meaning than its literal definition. The quotation marks can be used around certain words or phrases in writing to show (1) an opposite meaning, usually with sarcasm or (2) an unusual or less common meaning.

Notice the difference in meaning when quotation marks are used in the following sentences.

- 1) "Helping" a classmate with an answer during a test is really cheating.

In this sentence, the quotation marks show that this behavior is not really defined as *helping someone*. It also suggests that some people may try to say that they are not really cheating but just helping when they really understand it is cheating.

2) *Helping your sister with the dishes was really nice of you.*

In this sentence, there are no quotes. The use of *helping* is literal.

3) *There is a big interest these days in “green” cars.*

In this sentence, the writer is showing that the cars are not literally green in color. The meaning of green is a fairly new term meaning good for the environment.

4) *Everyone in that family buys green cars.*

In this sentence, there are no quotes, which means that the cars are green in color.

### Note (注解)

Since punctuation is not visible in spoken conversations, English speakers will sometimes indicate quotation marks by gesturing a quotation-mark motion with the first two fingers on each hand, sometimes referred to as an “air quote.”

In the photo, Professor Sharon Portman shows an “air quote”



This is most common when indicating that the word is not being used truthfully. The speaker will also use a sarcastic tone of voice. For example, if a worker wants to take a day off, he/she might say to his/her co-worker “I think I’m going to be ‘sick’ (indicating “sick” with air quotes) tomorrow.” The co-worker understands that the speaker is not really going to be sick, but will take the day off using sickness as an excuse.

(由于标点符号不能体现在口语中,说英文的人有时会用两手的食指和中指做出“空中引号”的手势。这种手势加上讽刺的语气常常意味着说话人所使用的词汇并不代表真正的词义。例如,如果一个工作人员想要休息一天,他/她会对同事说,“我想我明天要‘生病’[作出空中引号的手势]了”。他/她的同事明白,他/她只是以生病为借口请假一天,而不是真的生病了。)

### Exercise 1

In the following sentences, indicate whether quotes should be used for the underlined word or phrase by placing a check mark either in the “Quotes” or “No quotes” column. Then write a short definition or explanation of the underlined word in the sentence according to your choice of “Quotes” or “No quotes”.

Sentence	Quotes	No quotes	What does the word or phrase mean in this sentence?
<b>Example:</b> His <u>dancing</u> looks more like some kind of medical disability affecting the nervous system.	✓		It's not really dancing. The person is just moving around in a strange way and is thought to be dancing.
1. Today, the service in that restaurant was really <u>quick</u> . It only took three hours to get our lunch.			
2. Today, the service in that restaurant was really <u>quick</u> . It only took 20 minutes to get our lunch.			
3. Huangzhou is one of China's <u>small</u> cities with a population of six million, more than Los Angeles.			
4. Wow, that's a <u>healthy</u> snack you have: an apple, peanuts, and some juice.			
5. Wow, that's a <u>healthy</u> snack you have: a candy bar, chips, and a soda.			

续表

Sentence	Quotes	No quotes	What does the word or phrase mean in this sentence?
6. Mike thinks he should get paid for <u>working</u> on his computer video games.			
7. My two-year-old grandson wanted me to watch his <u>death-defying</u> trick; jumping over his stuffed toy.			
8. For many people, gardening is very <u>relaxing</u> and they like it.			
9. While motorized pedicabs have an engine and are gas-powered, we could say non-motorized pedicabs are <u>human-powered</u> .			

### Exercise 2

In the following groups of words, one word doesn't belong; it is the "odd man out." Circle the word that you think doesn't belong. Then indicate why. What do the others have in common?

"Odd man out"	Reason
1. rickshaw donkey cart pedicab bicycle	
2. business areas residential areas tourist areas parks	

续表

"Odd man out"	Reason
3. sampan junk cargo raft	
4. defensive degrading peasants outlawed	
5. ride defensively right of way yield motorized	
6. business franchise service firm	

## Exercise 3

## A. Match the definition with the idiom.

- | Idiom                    | Definition   |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1. ____ on one's own     | A. a common way something is usually done                    |
| 2. ____ in (good) shape  | B. referring to a person who is in a good physical condition |
| 3. ____ into (something) | C. doing something by yourself without someone's help        |
| 4. ____ rule of thumb    | D. interested in something; doing something a lot            |
| 5. ____ going rate       | E. the price for a service that is usually by the hour       |

## B. Choose the correct idiom to complete the sentences that follow.

1. I love traveling with Michael because he's really \_\_\_\_\_ trying unusual

exotic foods.

2. My mom stays \_\_\_\_\_ by playing tennis twice a week and walking 30 minutes a day.
3. The general \_\_\_\_\_ is you should drink an ounce of water for every two kilos of your body weight.
4. My sister didn't contact a travel agency; she decided the agenda for her vacation \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I'd really like to rent a car and drive out to the countryside. Do you know what the \_\_\_\_\_ is for a half day car rental?

**C. Respond to these questions. Write your answer in the space provided.**

1. What hobbies or interests are you into?

---

2. What are some good ways to stay in shape?

---

3. What can tourists do on their own in China?

---

4. What is the rule of thumb for tipping the tour bus driver?

---

5. What is the going rate for a massage in the hotel?

---

**Part IV Intensive Reading(精读):**

**Traditional Transportation: Pushing, Pulling and Pedaling(传统交通[方式]:推、拉和脚踏)**

**A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)**

mode of transportation

a way to move from one place to another 交通方式

preconceived

/ˌpri:kən'si:ʒ/ *adj.*

ideas that one has before having all of the information or facts 先入为主的



stereotypical

/ˌsteriəʊ'tɪpɪkəl/ *adj.*

ideas that one has about things or people, often not true in reality, usually based on generalities without considering all the information 抱有成见的

misconception /ˌmɪskən'sepʃən/ *n.*

an idea that is incorrect 错误观念

conversely /kən'vɜːslɪ/ *adv.*

in contrast, on the other hand 反过来说; 相反地

make one's way

get from one place to another with some difficulty through obstacles 推进; 逆行

comical /'kɒmɪkəl/ *adj.*

funny 喜剧性的; 滑稽的

cormorant /'kɔːməɾənt/ *n.*

a bird similar to, but smaller than a pelican, used in China for catching fish 鸬鹚, 鹈鹕

fluctuation /ˌflʌktju'eɪʃən/ *n.*

change 波动; 变动

vastness /'vʌːstnɪs/ *n.*

a huge area that seems to have no boundary 辽阔

through someone's eyes

the ability to understand how someone else thinks or feels about sth. 了解别人的感受; 洞察别人的心态

anticipate /æn'tɪsɪpeɪt/ *v.*

expect; predict 期待的; 预期的

The ability to carry things and move from one place to another is a fundamental part of the human experience. Next to food and shelter, transportation is probably the most basic necessity for human existence. And just like food and shelter, the common modes of transportation vary from country to country. Transportation is, in fact, a cultural phenomenon based on history, geography, and social interaction.

Tourists are naturally curious about what they see around them. Often, what seems like everyday habits to a native will be new and strange to many tourists. It is important for a tour guide to recognize those things that might be different for tourists coming from different parts of the world. In the case of transportation, a good tour guide will educate him/herself about the common transportation experiences in other countries. By doing so, she/he will understand the tourists' questions and be ready with explanations. For

example, it is useful to understand that in many Western countries, bike riding is primarily a recreational activity rather than a primary mode of transportation. Whereas Chinese might see bike riding as a necessity for getting from one place to another, an American sees it as a fun way to exercise.

When tourists visit a foreign country, they often go with preconceived ideas. They bring with them ideas that come from stereotypical representations in books, on TV or even in some tourist brochures. A tour guide can clarify those misconceptions with more accurate information. A good example of this is the idea of rickshaws (人力车). Even though many websites and tourist brochures describe the Hutong tour (胡同游) in “rickshaws,” the term is misused. As the use of pedicabs (三轮车) becomes more universal, the use of the term *pedicab* should replace the term *rickshaw*.

Conversely, as the world becomes “smaller,” people sometimes get a more accurate glimpse of life in China. Recently, the popular American TV program “The Amazing Race” had the contestants make their way through China as part of their challenge. The show illustrated some of the transportation issues a tourist who does not have the help of a tour guide might encounter in China. The contestants on the show also experienced some of the more traditional modes of transportation, which gave millions of viewers a look at something different in the way of transportation. In fact, it was quite comical to watch some of the American contestants try to pedal a pedicab cart loaded with a pile of heavy boxes across the busy city of Beijing. And it was fascinating to see the contestants help train the cormorants on *sampans* on the Yangtze River. Of course, seeing such demonstrations on TV is not nearly as interesting as seeing people use these vehicles in real, everyday life.

Many tourists have a limited knowledge of the long and complicated history of China, which is the basis for many of the traditional modes of transportation still being used today. Interactions with other countries, political philosophies, and economic fluctuations contributed to the way the Chinese moved from one place to another. Seeing some of those more traditional kinds of transportation is a reminder of the ties to these past experiences and ways of thinking.

Many tourists are unaware of not only the vastness of China geographically, but also the diversity of minority group cultures. Both contribute to some of the unique kinds of traditional transportation. In the northern desert areas, you can see camels used for transportation. In some areas, rafts made with animal skins are used to cross rivers. In other rural

areas, you rarely see women making use of certain kinds of vehicles due to cultural prohibitions.

Looking at the tourist experience through a tourist's eyes helps a tour guide anticipate possible questions before they are asked. The simple fact is that even something as basic as transportation can vary from country to country and culture to culture.

### B. Class Discussion ( 班级讨论 )

1. What are some reasons that transportation is a “basic necessity for human existence”?
2. Why do you think bicycle riding is not a major mode of transportation in the United States?
3. Stereotypes about groups of people often begin with “All ( group of people, ‘e. g. ’ Chinese, Africans, elderly people, etc. )” followed by a description. The statement may begin with the name of the group, implying “all”. This is one way to identify a stereotype. Here are some examples of stereotypes.

All Chinese people drink tea.

All Americans drive big cars.

For discussion, come up with a list of 5 stereotypes that someone might have. Think about places all over the world, and different groups of people. Then discuss why you think that stereotype exists.

### C. Writing Exercises ( 写作练习 )

1. Explain how the world has become “smaller.”
2. Thinking about the “vastness of China geographically”, write a short description of an area in China that you have knowledge of personally, or that you know about from studying.

Use descriptive words ...

## Part V Reading Passage(泛读):

### Splendid China 6: Harbin's Ice Festival: A Winter Wonderland (锦绣中华6:哈尔滨的冰雪节:冬天的仙境)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

oriental /ˌɔːrɪ'entəl/ <i>adj.</i>	of or from the orient 东方国家的;来自东方国家的
brave /breɪv/ <i>v.</i>	endure or face without showing fear 冒着;勇敢面对的
arctic /'ɑːktɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	of the regions around the North Pole 北极的;北极区的
caution /'kɔːʃən/ <i>v.</i>	warn (somebody) to be careful 提醒或警告要小心
digital camera	a camera that produces digital images 数码相机
exhibit /ɪg'zɪbɪt/ <i>n.</i>	object or collection of objects displayed for the public 展览品;陈列品
traditional /trə'dɪʃənəl/ <i>adj.</i>	following ideas and methods that have existed for a long time 传统的;习惯的
touring /'tʊərɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	a journey for business, pleasure, or education 游玩;观光旅游
display /dɪs'pleɪ/ <i>v.</i>	put something on show 展示;陈列
carve /kɑːv/ <i>v.</i>	shape by cutting away material from wood or stone 雕刻
decorate /'dekəreɪt/ <i>v.</i>	make more beautiful by adding ornaments to it 装饰
exposition /ˌekspə'zɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	exhibition of goods 展览会;博览会
fairy tale	a story (as for children) involving fantastic forces and beings 神仙故事, 童话
pyramid /'pɪrəmɪd/ <i>n.</i>	a very large building with sides as triangles built in ancient Egypt 金字塔
creative /kriː'eɪtɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	able to create 有创造力的
sidewalk /'saɪdwɔːk/ <i>n.</i>	path at the side of a street for people to walk on 人行道
rainbow /'reɪnbəʊ/ <i>n.</i>	a large curve of different colors that can appear in the sky when there is both sun and rain 彩虹

plentiful /'plentɪfʊl/ <i>adj.</i>	in large quantities or numbers 大量的;丰富的
all too often	very often 经常;通常
soil /sɔɪl/ <i>v.</i>	cause to become dirty 使变脏
pour /pɔː/ <i>v.</i>	cause to flow in a continuous stream 倒;灌
mechanical /mɪ'kænɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	of, connected with, produced by a machine 机械的;机械制造的
saw /sɔː/ <i>n.</i>	a hand or power tool or a machine used to cut hard material 锯;锯床
forklift /'fɔːklɪft/ <i>n.</i>	a small vehicle with two movable parts on the front used to lift heavy loads 铲车
devote oneself to	give (one's time, energy, etc.) to 致力于
imaginative /ɪ'mædʒɪnətɪv/ <i>a.</i>	containing new and interesting ideas 富有想象力的;爱想象的
clever /'klevə/ <i>adj.</i>	quick at learning and understanding things 机灵的;聪明的

Throughout the year thousands of people visit China's beautiful island of Hainan. Because of its year-round tropical climate, it is considered the Oriental Hawaii. But to the northeast in China, in Heilongjiang Province, thousands of visitors brave China's bitter arctic cold to visit the city of Harbin. During the shortest days, sunset begins at mid-afternoon. February temperatures often reach  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ , and tourists are often cautioned that their digital cameras may not work. But, because of the Ice Festival, Harbin is host to thousands of visitors who come each year to see the three main exhibits: the Sun Island Park, Harbin Ice and Snow World, and Zhaolin Park.

Zhaolin Park is the older and more traditional Ice Lantern Park that has had touring activities since 1963. Perhaps it can be said that these ice lanterns have been displayed every year as far back as the Qing Dynasty when local peasants and fishermen often made and used ice lanterns as jack-lights during the winter months. According to the custom, "jack-lights" were used to attract animals such as fish. People would also place these lanterns outside their houses or give the lanterns to children to play with. Today, Zhaolin Park prides itself for having the best ice lanterns made from the natural ice from the Songhua River. The lanterns are made, then carved and decorated.

The Sun Island Park is home to the Snow Sculpture Exposition. It has the world's largest indoor ice and snow art museum. It opens to the public every year in November.

The world's largest ice architecture park is the Harbin Ice and Snow World that opened in 1999. Many of the ice and snow sculptures usually come from traditional Chinese fairy tales or famous creations such as the Great Wall and Egyptian Pyramids. But, instead of creating large buildings, the sculptures may be as small as a mouse or as beautiful and lifelike as a dancing princess!



The sculptures made of snow and ice are magnificent. People over the years have become quite creative. Colorful lights are placed within the crystal-clear ice. When lights are placed beneath the sidewalks, people walk upon a wonderful rainbow of colors. Many people visit when work is just beginning in order to see the interesting way that these ice sculptures are made. Certainly, it is not as easy as making a snowman! Harbin has plentiful snow and ice, but all too often it is soiled from lying on the ground. Snowmaking machines are used to create new, clean snow. The clean snow is poured into large wooden boxes where the snow settles and becomes large solid blocks of ice. Large mechanical saws are used to cut the blocks into smaller pieces. And even the smaller pieces are often so heavy that a forklift is needed to lift them.

This is simply the beginning. Over the following weeks, hundreds of people will devote themselves to become artists. These artists will create imaginative and clever forms from snow and ice to create a winter wonderland of beauty.

### B. Questions for Reading Comprehension (阅读理解题)

1. Why do thousands of people brave China's bitter arctic cold to visit Harbin?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. When were ice lanterns first made and used for, and who started the custom?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Give two reasons why "jack-lights" were first used during the Qing Dynasty.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. What does the Sun Island Park pride itself for?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What are the characteristics of the ice and snow sculptures in the Harbin Ice and Snow World?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. How is the crystal-clear ice made?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Part VI Grammar Review (语法复习): The Subjunctive Mood (虚拟语气)

### A. Grammar Explanations (语法解释)

The subjunctive is a mood used to express importance, hypothesis, emotion and wishes. Most likely we come across the subjunctive mood in formal English. It is used mainly: (虚拟语气是一种动词形式,表示说话人的假设、情感或愿望。虚拟语气通常用于正式文体。主要用法如下:)

- in unreal conditional sentences that talk about unlikely or imaginary situations; (用于非真实条件,表示难以实现或与事实相反的假设情况;)
- in noun clauses of some verbs that express desire, request, or adjectives that stress importance or urgency; (用于表示建议、意愿动词后的宾语从句或强调重要性、紧迫性形容词后的从句;)
- to express a wish that is difficult to fulfill or contrary to fact. (用来表示难以实现或与事实相反的主观愿望。)

#### 1. Unreal conditional sentences (非真实条件句)

Conditional sentences are commonly divided into three basic types as Type 1, Type 2 and Type 3. (条件从句通常分为三种基本类型。)

- Type 1 talks about situation or result that is quite possible. (第一种表示真实条件。)
- Type 2 talks about unlikely or imagined situation or result in the present/future. (第二种表示现在或将来难以实现或与现在事实相反的假设情况。)
- Type 3 talks about unlikely or imagined situation or result in the past. (第三种表示过去难以实现或与过去事实相反的假设情况。)

## Basic usage of unreal conditional sentences (非真实条件的基本用法)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
Type 1 (真实条件句)	A. If I have time, I <b>visit</b> my parents every week. (如果我有时间,我每周去看我父母。) B. We'll <b>go</b> camping <b>if the weather clears</b> . (如果天气转晴,我们会去野营。)
Type 2 (与现在事实相反的条件从句)	C. If I <b>were</b> rich, I <b>would buy</b> a new house. D. <b>Were</b> I rich, I <b>would buy</b> a new house. (假如我有钱,我会买一幢新房子。) E. I <b>could</b> buy a new house <b>if I had</b> more money. F. <b>Had</b> I more money, I <b>could</b> buy a new house (假如我有更多的钱,我就能买一幢新房子。)
Type 3 (与过去事实相反的条件从句)	G. If you <b>had told</b> me earlier, I <b>would have gone</b> to the beach with you. H. <b>Had you told</b> me earlier, I <b>would have gone</b> to the beach with you. (假如你早点告诉我,我就跟你去海滩了。) I. I <b>wouldn't have broken</b> my arms <b>if I hadn't slipped</b> on the stairs. J. <b>Had I not slipped</b> on the stairs, I <b>wouldn't have broken</b> my arm. (假如我没有在楼梯上滑倒,我就不会摔断胳膊。)

## Notes (注解)

- We can put an if-clause first with a comma as in A., C. and G., or put the main clause at the beginning of a sentence without using a comma as in B. E. and I. (如果 if 条件状语从句在先,需用逗号将从句和主句分开如 A, C 和 G 句;如果主句在先,则不用逗号如 B, E 和 I 句。)
- The table below explains how conditional sentences are formed. (非真实条件句的构成请参照下表。)

	If Clause (条件从句)	Main Clause (主句)
Type 1 (真实条件从句)	simple present (一般现在形式)	simple present (一般现在形式) will + bare infinitive (will + 动词原形)
Type 2 (与现在事实相反的条件从句)	simple past (过去形式)	would/could + bare infinitive (would/could + 动词原形)
Type 3 (与过去事实相反的条件从句)	past perfect (过去完成形式)	would + have + past participle (would + have + 过去分词)

- “Were” instead of “was” is commonly used in the subjunctive mood even if the subject is “I, he, she or it”, as in C. (即使主语是第一或第三人称单数 I, he,



she 或 it, 虚拟语气中通常用 were 而不用 was 如 C 句。)

- Sometimes “if” is omitted in unreal conditional sentences containing “were” and “had”. In that case, the subject and verb are inverted as in D., F., H., and J. (如果非真实条件从句的谓语动词含有 were 或 had, 连词 if 有时可省略, 省略后用倒装结构, 即把 were 或 had 移到主语的前面如 D, F, H 和 J 句。)

## 2. Mixed tenses in conditional sentences (错综时间条件句)

Sample Sentence (例句)	
A. If you <u>knew</u> me better, you <u>wouldn't have said</u> that. (假如你更了解我, 你就不会那样说了。)	(present) (past)
B. If I <u>had had</u> breakfast before we left, I <u>would not be</u> hungry now. (假如在我们离开前我吃过早饭, 我现在就不会觉得饿了。)	(past) (present)

### Note (注解)

- The if-clause sometimes has a different time from the main clause of result. For instance, in Sentence A, if-clause is in the present while the main clause is in the past. In Sentence B, the if-clause is in the past and the main clause is in the present. (有时候条件从句表示的动作和主句表示的动作时间上不一致, 如 A 句从句动作发生在现在, 主句动作发生在过去。而 B 句从句动作发生在过去, 主句动作发生在现在。)

## 3. Implied subjunctive (含蓄条件句)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
but (但是, 然而)	A. I would have gone with you, <u>but</u> I had to go on a business trip. (我本想和你一起去, 但我必须去出差。)
without (没有)	B. I never would have succeeded in getting a plane ticket on such short notice <u>without</u> your help. (没有你的帮助, 我根本不可能在这么短的时间里买到飞机票。)
otherwise (否则, 要不然)	C. She left home two hours earlier than usual. <u>Otherwise</u> she would have missed the flight. (她比往常早两小时离家, 要不然她就错过飞机了。)
more ... (更……)	D. We would have seen more on our vacation had there been <u>more</u> favorable weather conditions. (假如天气条件更好的话, 我们本可以在假期中看到更多风光。)

### Note (注解)

- Sometimes an if-clause is implied rather than spoken. Imaginary situations are expressed in the context or by the use of a preposition. (表示假设的情况有时是含蓄的,通过介词短语或通过上下文来表示。)

I would have gone with you, but I had to go on a business trip.

= I would have gone with you if I didn't have to go on a business trip.

I never would have succeeded in getting a plane ticket on such short notice without your help.

= I never would have succeeded in getting a plane ticket on such short notice if you had not helped me.

She left home two hours earlier than usual. Otherwise she would have missed the flight.

= If she hadn't left home two hours earlier than usual, she would have missed the bus.

We would have seen more on our vacation had there been more favorable weather conditions.

= If there had been more favorable weather conditions, we would have seen more on our vacation.

#### (1) Verbs and adjectives expressing emotions (用在表示意愿的动词或形容词后)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
verb (动词)	<p>A. Joy <b>suggested</b> that <u>we (should) not go</u> to the mountains today <u>because of the storm</u>. (乔伊建议我们今天别去爬山了,因为有风暴。)</p> <p>B. Joy <b>insisted</b> that <u>she (should) meet</u> us at the airport. (乔伊坚持她要在机场接我们。)</p>
adjective (形容词)	<p>C. It is <b>essential</b> that you <u>(should) come</u> to the meeting this afternoon. (今天下午你一定要去开会。)</p> <p>D. It is <b>important</b> that everyone <u>(should) be</u> friendly and helpful in a <u>tour group</u>. (在旅游团中每个人都友善而乐于助人很重要。)</p>

### Notes (注解)

- The subjunctive mood is used with certain verbs (as “suggest” in A. and “insist” in B. ) to express a request or demand. It can also be used with certain adjectives

(as “essential” in C. and “important” in D. ) to stress the importance or urgency of doing something. In that case, the subjunctive verb “( should ) + bare infinitive” is used in that clause. (表示建议、要求的动词后面的宾语从句中[如 A 句的 suggest 和 B 句的 insist]需用虚拟语气。一些强调做某事的重要性和紧迫性意义的形容词[如 C 句的 essential 和 D 句的 important]后面的从句需用虚拟语气。这些从句中用“should + 动词原型”结构, should 可省略。)

- Below is a list of verbs and adjectives commonly followed by the subjunctive mood in that-clause. (下表列举了需用虚拟语气的常见动词和形容词。)

verbs(动词)	I suggest (advise, propose, recommend, request, demand, insist, order etc.) that... (subject + (should) + bare infinitive)
adjectives(形容词)	It is essential (important, necessary, critical, vital etc.) that ... (subject + (should) + bare infinitive)

## (2) Expressing wishes (表示愿望)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
wish about the present (与现在事实相反的主观愿望)	<p>A. I <b>wish</b> I <b>were</b> with you now as you are traveling in America.</p> <p>B. <b>If only</b> I <b>were</b> with you now as you are traveling in America. (我真希望现在和你一起在美国旅游。)</p> <p>C. I <b>wish</b> I <b>could go</b> to the moon for a vacation.</p> <p>D. <b>If only</b> I <b>could go</b> to the moon for a vacation. (但愿我能上月球去度假。)</p>
wish about the past (与过去事实相反的主观愿望)	<p>E. I <b>wished</b> I <b>had taken</b> more photos while in Greece.</p> <p>F. <b>If only</b> I <b>had taken</b> more photos while in Greece. (我真希望在希腊时拍了更多照片。)</p>

### Note (注解)

- The subjunctive mood is used after the verb “wish” or the phrase “if only” to express a wish that is unlikely to be fulfilled or contrary to fact. The past tense is used in the noun clause to make a wish about the present/future and the past perfect tense is used when a wish is made about the past. (动词 wish 或 if only 后的宾语从句中用虚拟语气,表示难以实现或与事实相反的主观愿望。与现在/将来事实相反的从句的谓语动词用过去形式,与过去事实相反的从句的谓

语动词用过去完成形式。)

(3) It's time (that) ... (“该是做……事情的时候了”句型)

Sample Sentence (例句)

- A. It's time (that) we **were** on our way before it starts to rain. (在下雨前我们该上路了。)  
 B. It's about time (that) the kids **were** in bed. (孩子们该上床睡觉了。)

Note (注解)

- Such expressions “It's time (that) ... , It's high time (that) ... , It's about time (that) ... ” indicate something must be done. The past tense is used in the clause. [It's time (that) ... , It's high time (that) ... , It's about time (that) ... 句型表示应该做某事。从句的谓语动词用过去式。]

(4) Adverbial clause introduced by “as if” or “as though” (as if 和 as though 引导的状语从句)

Sample Sentence (例句)

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| true conditional clause<br>(真实条件从句)    | A. It is so dark that it looks <b>as if it is going to rain</b> . (天很黑,看上去要下雨了。)  |
| untrue conditional clause<br>(非真实条件从句) | B. As we visited the Pacific islands, the natives spoke English <b>as if it were</b> their native tongue. (我们游览太平洋群岛时,当地人英语说得如同母语。)<br>C. While visiting and speaking with natives of the Caribbean islands, we felt <b>as though we had known</b> each other all of our lives. (在游览加勒比岛与当地入交谈时,我们感到仿佛彼此已认识一辈子了。) |

Note (注解)

- When the idea following “as if” or “as though” is untrue, the subjunctive mood is used. The past tense is used with unreal situations of the present as in B. and the past perfect tense is used with unreal situations of the past as in C. (as if 或 as though 引出的方式状语从句如表示与现在事实相反的假设情况,从句的动词用过去形式如 B 句;如表示与过去事实相反的假设情况,从句的动词用过去完成形式如 C 句。)

**B. Grammar Exercises (语法练习)****1. Choose the best answer to complete the following sentences.**

- (1) If I \_\_\_\_\_ in Japan, I would have sushi every day.  
a. am                      b. were                      c. have been                      d. had been
- (2) \_\_\_\_\_ so late, we would visit the museum.  
a. Were it not                      b. If it is not  
c. If it had not been                      d. Had it not been
- (3) The customs official demanded that all the passengers \_\_\_\_\_ their suitcases for inspection.  
a. open                      b. opened                      c. had opened                      d. will open
- (4) It's time that we \_\_\_\_\_ to sleep. We have to leave early tomorrow morning.  
a. go                      b. went                      c. had gone                      d. would go
- (5) If the boys win this match, their coach \_\_\_\_\_ them to a barbecue.  
a. will invite                      b. would invite                      c. invites                      d. invited
- (6) If we had waited for another half an hour, we \_\_\_\_\_ the pop star.  
a. would see                      b. saw  
c. were going to see                      d. would have seen
- (7) It is suggested that the mountain road \_\_\_\_\_ for a week for maintenance work.  
a. closes                      b. be closed                      c. is closed                      d. closed
- (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the earlier plane, we wouldn't have been late for our connecting plane.  
a. Had we caught                      b. Did we catch  
c. Have we caught                      d. Should we catch
- (9) When you are traveling, it is important that you \_\_\_\_\_ home as soon as you arrive.  
a. will call                      b. are calling                      c. call                      d. called
- (10) What a beautiful day! If only I \_\_\_\_\_ in the sun at the beach instead of sitting in the classroom now.  
a. am lying                      b. would lie                      c. had lied                      d. were lying
- (11) If I went to the moon, I \_\_\_\_\_ back some moon rock.  
a. will bring                      b. bring                      c. had brought                      d. would bring
- (12) It is essential that we \_\_\_\_\_ both a passport and visa when visiting foreign countries.  
a. shall have                      b. had                      c. have had                      d. have

## 2. Complete the dialogues by writing the correct subjunctive form of the verb given.

(1)

A. I ruined my sweater when I washed it yesterday.

B. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (read) the label on the sweater, you would not have washed it in hot water. The sweater \_\_\_\_\_ (not be ruined).

(2)

A. Look, John, what I have bought for you!

B. Oh, no! The baby was sleeping. You woke him up.

A. I'm sorry. If I \_\_\_\_\_ (know) he was taking a nap now, I wouldn't have made so much noise.

(3)

A. It's too bad. It's snowing.

B. If it \_\_\_\_\_ (not snow), we could go for the tour through Zhangjiajie National Forest Park.

(4)

Wife: I miss my parents. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ (can see) them now.

Husband: Well, if we \_\_\_\_\_ (live) closer, we would see each other more often.

Wife: If we owned a bigger house, they \_\_\_\_\_ (can live) with us.

Husband: You know they would never do that. They \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) that they were intruding.

Wife: You're right. But I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) with them now. Let's go visit them.

Husband: All the way to California? We could if we \_\_\_\_\_ (not have to) work and if the kids \_\_\_\_\_ (not have) school.

Wife: Maybe they will come to visit us in the summer.

Husband: I'm sure they will. Why don't you call them on the phone?

Wife: I just did. That's why I miss them so much right now.

## 3. Change the following statements into the subjunctive mood.

Example:

John came to see me when I was sick, so I didn't feel sad.

→ If John hadn't come when I was sick, I would have felt sad.

(1) We didn't go swimming yesterday because it snowed.

→ If it had not snowed, we \_\_\_\_\_.

- (2) We ran out of gas on the way because we didn't stop at the gas station.  
→ We wouldn't have run out of gas on the way if we \_\_\_\_\_.
- (3) A red light requires everyone to stop behind the white line.  
→ A red light requires that everyone \_\_\_\_\_.
- (4) It's a pity you didn't go to Boston with us. We had a wonderful vacation.  
→ If you \_\_\_\_\_, you would have had a wonderful vacation.
- (5) I have to leave Shanghai to come back to the States now.  
→ I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ to come back to the state States now.
- (6) We had a wonderful trip in Beijing with the help of Joy.  
→ Without the help of Joy, we \_\_\_\_\_.
- (7) It's getting late. We should go back to our hotel.  
→ It's time we \_\_\_\_\_.
- (8) Joy said, "You'd better use the tourist pedicabs instead of those motorized pedicabs which are not licensed."  
→ Joy recommended that they \_\_\_\_\_ instead of those motorized pedicabs which are not licensed.
- (9) Joy told Susan: "You should negotiate the price before you go on the ride."  
→ Joy suggested that Susan \_\_\_\_\_ before she goes on the ride.
- (10) It's a good idea for a tourist to stay with a buddy or in a group when traveling.  
→ It is essential that a tourist \_\_\_\_\_ when traveling.
- (11) They didn't use the city map, so they got lost.  
→ Had they used the city map, they \_\_\_\_\_.
- (12) Joy told Nick to ride his bike in parks or places that are away from the busy main streets.  
→ It is vital that Nick \_\_\_\_\_ in parks or places that are away from the busy main streets.

4. Complete the sentences with your own ideas, using the subjunctive mood.

- (1) If I had my own plane, I ...
- (2) Without your help, I ...
- (3) I ran out of time. Otherwise I ...
- (4) If it were not for the storm, we ...
- (5) I ..., but I didn't know about it.
- (6) If we had taken your advice, we surely ...

- (7) I asked for a wake-up call, or I ...  
(8) If you ..., you would not feel so tired all the time.  
(9) I wish I ...  
(10) Our guide recommended that we ...  
(11) Joy requested that ...  
(12) It's time that China ...

## Part VII Unit Review Exercises (单元综合练习)

### A. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

1. This list of vocabulary words includes different parts of speech for some words. Write each word in the appropriate part of speech category in the table below the list.

- |                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) interchange             | (2) interchangeable   |
| (3) interchangeably         | (4) migrate           |
| (5) outlawed                | (6) degrade           |
| (7) degrading               | (8) misery            |
| (9) miserable               | (10) outnumber        |
| (11) "green"                | (12) defensive        |
| (13) defensively            | (14) anticipate       |
| (15) fundamentals           | (16) be in good shape |
| (17) through someone's eyes | (18) stereotypical    |
| (19) stereotype             | (20) misconception    |
| (21) fluctuate              | (22) fluctuation      |
| (23) make one's way         | (24) vast             |

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Adverb	Idiom/Idiomatic expression



2. Now choose a word from the list above to complete the sentences below. Think about the part of speech that the blank represents. For verbs, Use the appropriate tense and pay attention to the subject-verb agreement.

- (1) The weather today is \_\_\_\_\_; it's hot and it's been raining all day.
- (2) A common \_\_\_\_\_ of Americans is that they are all blonde and blue-eyed.
- (3) The Olympic Committee \_\_\_\_\_ the use of steroids in Olympic competitions.
- (4) With some help, the little girl \_\_\_\_\_ from the back of the group to the front so she could see better.
- (5) The number of tourists \_\_\_\_\_ from month to month.
- (6) When my eight-year-old daughter described the Temple of Heaven, I realized it was even more amazing \_\_\_\_\_.
- (7) In the last three tours, the women \_\_\_\_\_ the men two to one.
- (8) In the beginning of her marriage, my daughter-in-law only knew the \_\_\_\_\_ of cooking.
- (9) Most bicycle parts are \_\_\_\_\_, which makes it easier to repair bicycles.
- (10) A common \_\_\_\_\_ that many Americans have about China is that everyone only speaks Chinese.

### B. Dictation (听写)

First, listen to the entire paragraph to understand the main idea. Then listen to each sentence carefully and write down exactly what you hear on a separate piece of paper. Finally, listen to the whole paragraph one more time to check your sentences.

### C. Sentence combination (句子组合)

The following sentences can be combined using transitions of addition or contrast. Use each transition once to join the sentences. Remember to use correct punctuation.

#### Example:

Tour guides can give their visitors interesting information about the common types of transportation in China. They can help tourists experience some different kinds of transportation.

*You write:*

Tour guides can give their visitors interesting information about the common types of transportation in China; **moreover**, they can help tourists experience some different

kinds of transportation.

Transitions of Addition	Transitions of Contrast
moreover, furthermore, In addition,	whereas, by contrast, conversely, on the other hand

1. Some tourists will use their free time to explore on their own. Others will relax in their rooms during their free time.  

---

---
2. In many countries, most people depend primarily on public transportation to move from place to place. Most Americans depend primarily on private automobiles for their transportation.  

---

---
3. A sampan can provide a means of income for a family. It can also serve as housing.  

---

---
4. A human-powered pedicab is good for the environment and is used primarily by tourists. A motorized pedicab is bad for the environment and is used primarily by Chinese for short trips.  

---

---
5. The media can mislead its viewers with inaccurate, limited or out-of-date information when representing life in foreign countries. It can provide an unbiased and honest view of life in far off places that viewers may otherwise never know.  

---

---
6. When Wang Qingshan first moved from the country to the city, he sometimes felt lonely. Finding a job that provided a decent living was very difficult.  

---

---
7. Using human-powered pedicabs is a great way to help the environment. It provides a job and great exercise for the driver!

---

---

#### D. Translation (翻译)

##### 1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.

(1) Tourists are naturally curious about what they see around them.

(2) Junks can have two to four sails, and they are still used today to carry cargo on major rivers.

(3) Last year, some tourist firms in the Shichahai Lake area started a pedicab business.

(4) It was fascinating to see the fishermen train the cormorants on a sampan on the Yangtze River.

(5) In his novel, *Rickshaw Boy*, Lao She describes the misery of those who worked in this job.

##### 2. Translate the following sentences into English.

(1) 机动车辆必须要等绿灯亮了才能行驶。

(2) 在沙漠中,骆驼是常见的载人运货的交通工具。

(3) 游客使用三轮车,他们帮助了更多的人就业。

(4) 许多大城市中的主要宾馆都出租自行车。

(5) 游客到外国访问时,常常抱有成见。

## *Nuit 6*

# Unit 7

## Train Travel in China ( 乘火车游中国 )

In this unit, Joy's group takes the maglev train to the Shanghai airport. Also, Joy gives Mark and Karen advice about train travel because they will be staying an additional week to do some traveling on their own.

## Part I Introduction (介绍):

### Getting Started (入门练习)

#### A. Warm-up Exercises (预习)

On a train schedule, Chinese passenger trains have different letters and numbers. Do you know what the different letters mean? With a partner, write the letter next to the class of train. Then answer the questions that follow.

Classes of Passenger Trains:

No letter (4 numbers)	D	L	K
	T	Y	Z

- \_\_\_ 1. Direct Long Distance Non-stop Express Train
- \_\_\_ 2. Express Train with some stops
- \_\_\_ 3. Tourist Train
- \_\_\_ 4. Commuter/Local Train
- \_\_\_ 5. Long Distance High Speed Train
- \_\_\_ 6. Top-line High Speed Train
- \_\_\_ 7. Passenger Extra (Temporary) Train

- a. Which class of train is usually the fastest: T, K, or D?
- b. Which class of train is the slowest?
- c. Where do tourist trains go? Are they fast or slow?
- d. When do “passenger extra” trains run?

BONUS QUESTION: Visit the website, [www.chinatravelguide.com](http://www.chinatravelguide.com). Which classes of trains can passengers take from Beijing to Qinhuangdao? About how long does each class of train take? List them from fastest to slowest.

BONUS QUESTION: A passenger can take 5 classes of trains from Beijing to Qinhuangdao:

- D (top-line train): about 2 hours
- Y (tourist train): 3 hrs 16 min
- T (high-speed train): 4—5 hours
- K (express train with stops): about 5 hours
- No letter (commuter train): 3—6 hours

## B. Joy's Introductory Speech (林欢的开场白)

Joy tells her tour group about the bullet train they will be taking to the Shanghai Airport the next day.

### Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

magnetic levitation	a technology that uses magnetic forces to lift and move sth. 磁浮
magnet /'mæɡnɪt/ <i>n.</i>	piece of iron or steel that can attract other metals 磁铁
propel /prəʊ'pel/ <i>v.</i>	move or push something forward with great force 推进
conventional /kən'venʃənəl/ <i>adj.</i>	typical; regular; used for a long time 传统的
record /'rekɔ:d/ <i>adj.</i>	the most extreme ever measured 记录
track /træk/ <i>n.</i>	the two metal lines that a train travels on 铁路钢轨
manufactured /,mænju'fæktʃəd/ <i>adj.</i>	built or made in a factory 制造的; 工厂生产的
sharp /ʃɑ:p/ <i>adj.</i>	an exact time; no earlier or later 准时地; 正电的

“Tomorrow we will be taking the Shanghai Maglev Train to the airport. This is one of the fastest trains in the world. Let me tell you a little bit about it.

“Maglev means ‘magnetic levitation’. In other words, magnets are used to lift and propel the train at very high speeds. This type of train is faster, quieter, and smoother than trains with conventional wheels.

“The train we will be traveling on was built in Germany, and it is by far the fastest train in China. Its normal top speed is 430 Kilometers per hour (km/h), but in tests it has reached a record speed of 501 km/h. Because the track from Longyang Road Station to Pudong International Airport is only 30 km long, it will just reach its top speed before it begins to slow down. The average speed for the entire trip is 245 km/h.

“Although the Shanghai Maglev Train is China's fastest train, there are many other high-speed trains in China. These trains travel between the major cities of Harbin, Shanghai, and Guangzhou at top speeds of 250 km/h.

“Currently, the fastest non-maglev train in China is the Beijing-Tianjin train. It began service the week before the 2008 Olympics. This train, which was the first super high-speed train designed and manufactured in China, can

reach speeds of 350 km/h. It travels a total of 117 km at an average speed of 240 km/h. The trip from Beijing to Tianjin used to take 70-80 minutes by train, but now it takes only 30 minutes.

“Riding on the maglev train is an experience you should not miss. Be sure to pack up your suitcases tonight because breakfast tomorrow is at 7 a. m. Our bus will be leaving the hotel at 8 a. m. sharp.”

### C. Listening for the Main Idea (泛听)

Listen to Joy’s speech. As you listen, number the topics in Joy’s speech in the order you hear them.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Joy describes the new Beijing-Tianjin train.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Joy explains what a “maglev” train is.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Joy gives instructions about leaving the hotel.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Joy discusses the speeds of the Shanghai Maglev train.

### D. Filling in the Blanks (填空)

Now listen to Joy’s speech again and fill in the blanks.

“Tomorrow we will be taking the Shanghai Maglev Train to the airport. This is one of the fastest trains in the world. Let me tell you a little bit about it.

“Maglev means ‘magnetic levitation.’ In other words, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ are used to lift and propel the train at very high speeds. This type of train is faster, (2) \_\_\_\_\_, and smoother than trains with conventional wheels.

“The train we will be traveling on was built in (3) \_\_\_\_\_, and it is by far the fastest train in China. Its normal top speed is 430 Kilometers per hour (km/h), but in tests it has reached a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ speed of 501 km/h. Because the track from Longyang Road Station to Pudong International Airport is only 30 km long, it will just (5) \_\_\_\_\_ its top speed before it begins to slow down. The average speed for the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ trip is 245 km/h.

“Although the Shanghai Maglev Train is China’s (7) \_\_\_\_\_ train, there are many other high-speed trains in China. These trains travel between the (8) \_\_\_\_\_ cities of Harbin, Shanghai, and Guangzhou at top speeds of 250 km/h.

“Currently, the fastest non-maglev train in China is the Beijing-Tianjin train. It began (9) \_\_\_\_\_ the week before the 2008 Olympics. This train, which was the first super high-speed train (10) \_\_\_\_\_ and manufactured in China, can reach speeds of 350 km/h. It travels a total of 117 km at an (11) \_\_\_\_\_ speed of 240 km/h. The trip from Beijing to Tianjin used to take 70-80 minutes by train,



but now it (12) \_\_\_\_\_ only 30 minutes.

“(13) \_\_\_\_\_ on the maglev train is an experience you should not miss. Be sure to pack up your suitcases tonight because (14) \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow is at 7 a. m. Our bus will be leaving the hotel at 8 a. m. (15) \_\_\_\_\_.”

### E. Listening for Details (精听)

Listen to Joy's speech again and decide whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F). Then change the false statements to make them true.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Conventional trains are noisier than maglev trains.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Maglev trains do not have wheels.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The Shanghai Maglev train's average speed is 430 km/h.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The Shanghai-Guangzhou train is a maglev train.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Both the Shanghai Maglev Train and the Beijing-Tianjin train were built in China.

## Part II Conversation 1 (对话 1):

### Traveling by Train in China (乘火车游中国)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

yurt /jʊət/ n.	round grass hut 圆顶帐篷; 蒙古包
yak /jæk/ n.	a type of animal that looks like a long-haired ox 牦牛
originate /ə'ɪdʒəneɪt/ v.	to start from 发端; 起源于
compartment /kəm'pɑ:tmənt/ n.	small enclosed space 斗室; 舱; 车厢
bunk bed	beds that are one above the other and attached to a wall or frame 上下两层贴墙的床铺
be worth (sth.)	have value 值得
booking fee	reservation fee 订票费
by the way	expression used to change the topic of a conversation 顺便提及
stock up	increase the supply of something 储存

Mark and Karen tell Joy about their additional travel plans and ask her for some advice.

Mark: Joy, you know we won't be going to the airport tomorrow. Karen and I are staying in China for another week.

Joy: Yes, I did know that. Will you be staying in Shanghai?

Mark: Just for a few more days. But then we're planning to visit one of Karen's friends in Hohhot(呼和浩特). After that, we will fly out of Beijing.

Joy: Hohhot. Wow! That's in Inner Mongolia(内蒙古). What is your friend doing there, Karen?

Karen: She's been teaching English at a university there for a couple of years. She suggested we visit her if we want to see a very different part of China.

Mark: She said we might even see minority people there who live in yurts and ride on yaks.

Joy: I've always wanted to go there. It sounds fascinating. How are you going to get there?

Karen: We were thinking of taking the train, but we don't have tickets yet. Is there a train that goes to Hohhot directly from Shanghai? Or would we have to change trains in Beijing?

Joy: The train schedule is available on the Internet. We can look it up at the business center in our hotel.

*Later that evening, Joy shows Mark and Karen the train schedule website.*

Joy: You're in luck. You can get a train in Shanghai that goes directly to Hohhot. It originates in Hangzhou. It takes about 26 hours, so you'll have to spend the night on the train.

Mark: That's going to be quite an adventure. How much will the tickets cost?

Joy: You can see the prices right here on the website. There are four levels of accommodation with different prices. The more you pay, the more comfortable you will be.

Karen: It looks like the most expensive one is "soft sleeper." What is that?

Joy: A soft sleeper car has several private compartments for four people each. In each compartment, there are two pairs of bunk beds and sometimes a sink. The top bed can be folded down during the day. It's the most comfortable way to travel, especially for long distances.

- Karen: What's the difference between a soft sleeper and a hard sleeper? Are the beds harder?
- Joy: Maybe a little. The main difference is that it's more crowded and has less privacy than a soft sleeper car. The bunks are stacked three high and there are no private compartments. But it's also less expensive, so it's an economical way for many people to travel.
- Karen: The soft sleeper sounds very nice. I bet it's worth the extra money. How can we get tickets?
- Joy: The easiest way is through my travel agency. There's a booking fee, but it's much easier than trying to get the tickets on your own. I can book the tickets and have them delivered to the hotel reception desk for you.
- Mark: That would be great, Joy. By the way, do you know if there's a dining car on this train?
- Joy: Yes, there is. But you might want to bring some food with you. You can also get off the train and buy food at some of the train stations.
- Mark: We'll have to stock up on snacks before we go.
- Karen: Thanks for all your help, Joy. I wish we could take the maglev train with the rest of the group tomorrow.
- Joy: You can! Why don't you take the train with us and then take a taxi back to the hotel from the airport?
- Karen: Could we do that?
- Joy: Sure! The train ticket is included in the tour. Why not?
- Mark: That's a great idea. Thanks for everything, Joy!
- Joy: You're welcome!

### B. Comprehension (综合理解)

Pair up with another student and answer the following questions about the previous conversation. Then, discuss your answers with the whole class.

1. Look at Joy's first three responses.
  - a. How does she show interest in Karen and Mark's plans?
  - b. How does Joy help Mark and Karen with their plans?
2. A lot of information is exchanged in this conversation. Joy answers Mark and Karen's questions and also gives additional helpful information.

What topics below did Mark and Karen ask Joy about? Check all that apply.

\_\_\_ a. whether they should fly or take the train to Hohhot

- \_\_\_\_\_ b. what there is to see in Inner Mongolia
- \_\_\_\_\_ c. whether they'll need to take two trains
- \_\_\_\_\_ d. how long it takes to get to Hohhot by train
- \_\_\_\_\_ e. how much a train ticket to Hohhot will cost
- \_\_\_\_\_ f. what the difference is between a soft and a hard sleeper car
- \_\_\_\_\_ g. whether they should travel by soft or a hard sleeper
- \_\_\_\_\_ h. whether food is available on the train or not
- \_\_\_\_\_ i. where they should stay in Hohhot
- \_\_\_\_\_ k. how to buy tickets
- \_\_\_\_\_ l. how to join the others on the maglev train

What suggestions did Joy give to Mark and Karen? Check all that apply.

- \_\_\_\_\_ a. They should fly instead of taking the train.
- \_\_\_\_\_ b. They should visit a yurt in Inner Mongolia.
- \_\_\_\_\_ c. They should travel by soft sleeper rather than hard sleeper.
- \_\_\_\_\_ d. They should purchase the tickets online.
- \_\_\_\_\_ e. They should bring extra food with them on the train.
- \_\_\_\_\_ f. They should ride on the maglev train with the group the next day.

Now find the lines in the conversation where Joy gives advice and underline them. Which expressions does Joy use to give suggestions?

---

---

### C. Speaking Activities (口语练习)

For the following activities, form groups of three.

1. Practice the conversation between Joy, Mark, and Karen. Take turns reading the three different parts.
2. Many trains in China have soft sleeper, hard sleeper, soft seat, and hard seat cars. How are these kinds of cars different? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each one? Practice describing each type of car in English.
3. Discuss your experiences with train travel. What is the farthest you've traveled by train? What types of trains have you traveled on? What advice do you have for people traveling to other parts of China by train?

## Part III Conversation 2 (对话 2):

### Bullet Trains (高速列车)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

high-tech /'haɪtek/ <i>adj.</i>	involving advanced technology 高科技
science fiction	form of literature based on imaginary or futuristic science 科幻小说
cabin /'kæbɪn/ <i>n.</i>	small room on a ship or plane 船舱; 机舱
digital display screen	a screen on which electronic data appear 电子数据屏幕
speedometer /spi'dɒmɪtə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	device used to measure speed 车速器
multi-tasking /'mʌltɪ,tɑːskɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	doing more than one activity at a time 同时进行多项任务
go with	choose; select 选择

*Joy and her tour group board the maglev train at the Longyang Road Station and find their seats.*

Ryan: Wow! I've heard of bullet trains\*, but this train is even more incredible. It's so modern and high tech. It looks like something out of a science fiction movie.

Natalie: You can say that again. The cabin looks more like a plane than a train.

Ryan: Joy, what's that digital display screen in the front of the car? Is that a clock?

Joy: It's a clock and a speedometer. When we start moving, that screen will show our speed. It's pretty amazing to watch.

Ryan: That's awesome. So we'll know when we reach our top speed?

Joy: Yes, if you're paying attention! The whole trip lasts only 7 minutes and 20 seconds. After 4 minutes, the train will start slowing.

Natalie: I'd rather be looking out the window than staring at the screen!

Ryan: I think I can do both. I'm good at multi-tasking.

Joy: Hey, we're starting to move. Hang on, everybody! Get ready for the ride of your life!

Ryan: Hey, Joy! How fast can this train go?

Joy: Our top speed on this trip will be 431 kilometers per hour. The rush hour trains actually go faster than the other trains. When rush hour is over, the trains go a little slower: 301 kilometers per hour. And it takes 30 seconds longer to get to the airport.

Mark: Wow! I wish we had something like this in the United States. I would love to get to my office downtown in 10 minutes!

Natalie: Are they planning to connect the maglev train to other cities?

Joy: Actually, that was the original plan. The official name of this line is "Shanghai Magnetic Levitation Demonstration Operation Line." The company that built it was thinking of it as a demonstration model. Once this line proved successful, they were hoping to build a longer line connecting Shanghai and Beijing.

Ryan: That would be great. Are they going to build it?

Joy: Well, the problem is that maglev trains cost a lot of money. Because these trains use a different type of technology, they can't run on conventional tracks, so completely new tracks would have to be built. It's really expensive. That's one reason why China decided to go with conventional high-speed trains instead.

Mark: Isn't there a bullet train from Beijing to Tianjin? You mentioned yesterday that one was built during the 2008 Olympics.

Joy: That's right. It's not a maglev train, though, but it's almost as fast. It can go 350 km/hr.

Ryan: Hey! It's been less than two minutes, and we're already up to 300 km/hr!

Mark: Look out the window! We are really flying!

Natalie: You can say that again\*\*!

( \* In English, a "bullet train" can refer to any super high-speed train, not just a maglev train. )

( \*\* "You can say that again. " : an expression used to mean "I totally agree with what you just said. " )

## B. Questions for Comprehension and Critical Thinking (综合理解和逻辑思考)

Pair up with another student and answer the following questions together. Then, discuss your answers with the whole class.

1. Why do Ryan and Natalie think the maglev train looks like something from a science fiction movie?
2. Who is more interested in the speed of the train, Ryan or Natalie? How can you tell?
3. How is the rush hour schedule for the maglev train different from the regular schedule?
4. According to Joy, why is the Shanghai Maglev train called a “Demonstration Operation Line”?
5. Do you think a maglev line should be built from Shanghai to Beijing? Why or why not?
6. What does the expression “you can say that again” mean? When can this expression be used?

## C. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

Fill in the blanks using vocabulary from Joy’s speech and the two conversations in this unit. Use each of the words below one time.

you can say that again	conventional	rush hour
you’re welcome	record	bunk beds
is worth	entire	compartment
smooth	economical	multi-tasking

1. Tourist: Thank you so much. Your advice is really helpful.  
Tour Guide: \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Tourist: Maglev trains are awesome.  
Tour Guide: \_\_\_\_\_.
3. In a soft sleeper \_\_\_\_\_, there are two sets of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Even though a hard sleeper ticket is more \_\_\_\_\_ than a soft sleeper ticket, many guests think the added comfort \_\_\_\_\_ the extra cost.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ trains are not as \_\_\_\_\_ as maglev trains.
6. My brother is good at \_\_\_\_\_. He can text on his cell phone, watch a video, and do his homework in \_\_\_\_\_ time.
7. During \_\_\_\_\_, it seems like everyone in the \_\_\_\_\_ city is trying to

get from one place to another at the same time.

## Part IV Intensive Reading(精读):

### China's Amazing Trains(中国令人惊奇的火车)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

commercial /kə'mɜːʃəl/ <i>adj.</i>	for business purposes 商业的
unreliable /ˌʌnrɪ'laɪəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	easily breaking down; not consistent 不牢靠的; 不可靠的
elevation /ˌelɪ'veɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	how high a location is compared to sea level 海拔高度
altitude sickness	illness caused by being at a high elevation with thinner air 高空病
canister /'kænɪstə/ <i>n.</i>	metal container that holds a gas 罐, 筒
lightheaded /'laɪt'hedɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	dizzy feeling from lack of oxygen 头晕; 头昏眼花
diesel engine	engine that burns a heavy oil instead of gasoline 柴油机
tunnel /'tʌnəl/ <i>n.</i>	underground passageway that has been dug through a mountain 隧道
plateau /'plætəʊ/ <i>n.</i>	high flat land formation 高原
sophisticated /sə'fɪstɪkətɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	well-designed; advanced; complicated 复杂的
relatively /'relətɪvli/ <i>adv.</i>	in comparison to others 相对地
nostalgic /nɒs'tældʒɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	sentimental about the past 怀旧的
streamlined /'striːmlaɪnd/ <i>adj.</i>	smoothly shaped for high speeds 流线型

The Shanghai Maglev Train is the fastest and best-known commercially operating maglev train in the world. However, it was not the first. The first commercial maglev train opened in 1984 in Birmingham, England, and ran for eleven years. This single-track train took passengers back and forth between the Birmingham airport and the Birmingham train station at the “incredible” speed of 42 kilometers per hour (26 miles per hour). Of course, the track was only 600 meters (2000 feet) long. It eventually closed down because it was



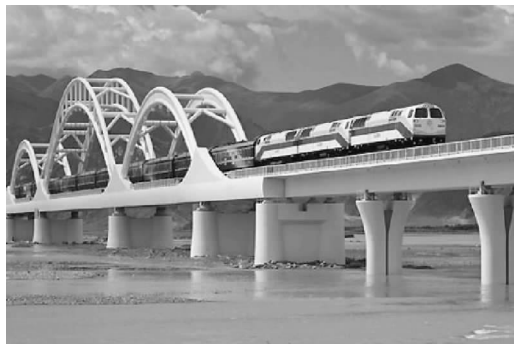
unreliable.



The Shanghai Maglev Train, which began service in January 2004, runs ten times faster and goes fifty times farther than the Birmingham maglev train did. The Shanghai line took two and a half years to construct and cost 10 billion RMB (US \$1.33 billion). Siemens, the German company

that built it, considered it as a “sales tool.” They hoped that this “Demonstration Operation Line” would show off the new technology and that China would build longer maglev lines — from Shanghai to Beijing, for example. Due to the high cost, however, China eventually decided to use more conventional high-speed trains for that route. However, the Shanghai Maglev Line is being extended to connect Shanghai’s two airports (Pudong International Airport and Shanghai Hongqiao International Airport). When completed, it will take only 15 minutes to travel the 55 kilometers (34 miles) between the two airports. Eventually, the maglev line may be extended to Hangzhou.

The Shanghai Maglev Train is not the only amazing train in China that is popular with tourists. The Qinghai-Tibet railway, which opened in 2006, is the world’s highest railway. Over 80% of the track is above 3900 meters above sea level (13,000 feet). The highest point is at Tanggula Pass, with an elevation 5072 meters (16,640 feet). To prevent altitude sickness, oxygen is pumped into the cabins at certain points, and passengers receive personal canisters of oxygen in case they feel lightheaded. Also, each train has a doctor on board to assist passengers. Because the train is so high, special diesel engines had to be developed for the train to operate in the thin mountain air. Also remarkable is the fact that over 500 meters of the track is built over



permafrost, the ground which is soft in summer but frozen hard in the rest of the year, requiring additional special technology. This amazing route passes through the world's highest railway tunnel, Fenghuoshan Tunnel, at 4905 meters above sea level (16,093 feet); past Qinghai Lake, China's largest lake; and over the huge Tibetan plateau, commonly referred to as "The Rooftop of the World."

China is currently working on a huge project to connect several major cities with high-speed rail. Scheduled to be completed in 2020, the project will include nearly 25,750 kilometers (16,000 miles) of new track. The total cost will be about 240 billion RMB (\$300 billion). Construction on the Beijing-Shanghai line alone has provided 110,000 jobs. Trains on this route will be able to reach speeds of 354 kilometers per hour (220 mph). According to Fortune magazine, this high-speed passenger railroad network will be "the largest, fastest, and most technologically sophisticated in the world."



Most tourists are fascinated by China's rail system. In America, for example, most traveling is done by car or plane, so Americans think train travel is exciting and interesting. Since long distance trains in America are relatively slow, many Americans also view train travel as relaxing and nostalgic. In fact, there are no maglev or high-speed trains in the U. S. In China, only the maglev train is called a "bullet train," but to English speakers, any high-speed train with a streamlined look is a "bullet train", regardless of whether it uses maglev technology or not.

#### B. Class Discussion (班级讨论)

1. Would you like to travel to Tibet by train? Why or why not?
2. Do you think China should build more maglev train lines? If so, where do you think the next one should be built?
3. How is plane travel different from train travel? Brainstorm some ideas and write them in the chart below. Then list ideas from the class on the board. (Take notes! You can use these ideas for the writing exercises in Part C.)

	Plane Travel	Train Travel
Advantages		
Disadvantages		

### C. Writing Exercises (写作练习)

1. Is it better to travel by airplane or train? Write an essay in which you discuss the advantages and disadvantages of air travel and train travel.
2. Why do so many people love to travel by train? Write an essay in which you discuss several benefits of train travel. You may include examples from your own experience to illustrate your points.

## Part V Reading Passage (泛读):

### Splendid China 7: Huanglong Cave — an Underground Magic Palace (锦绣中华 7: 黄龙洞——地下魔幻宫)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

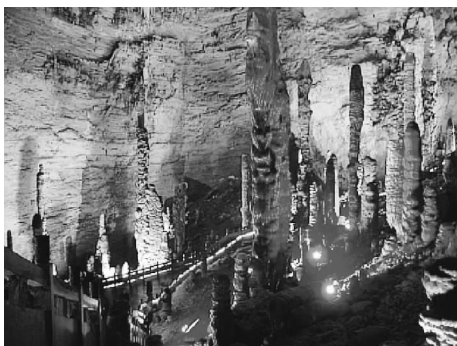
drape /dreɪp/ <i>v.</i>	cover or decorate 遮盖或装饰
mysterious /mɪs'tɪəriəs/ <i>adj.</i>	full of mystery; hard to understand or explain 神秘的; 不可思议的
pristine /'prɪstɪn/ <i>adj.</i>	in its original condition 原始状态的
cave /keɪv/ <i>n.</i>	hollow place in the side of a cliff or underground 洞穴
hectare /'hektə:/ <i>n.</i>	measure of area equal to 10 000 square meters 公顷 (合 10 000 平方米)
magic /'mædʒɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	wonderful; excellent 绝妙的; 极好的
layer /'leɪə/ <i>n.</i>	thickness of material laid over a surface 层
brook /brʊk/ <i>n.</i>	small stream 小溪

waterfall /'wɔ:təfɔ:l/ <i>n.</i>	a place where water from a river or stream falls down over a cliff or rock 瀑布
fairyland /'feərɪlənd/ <i>n.</i>	a place of delicate beauty or magical charm 仙境
stalactite /'stæləktait/ <i>n.</i>	a deposit of calcium carbonate hanging from sides of a cave 钟乳石
stalagmite /'stæləɡmaɪt/ <i>n.</i>	a deposit of calcium carbonate like an inverted stalactite formed on the floor of a cave 石笋
concentration /ˌkɒnsən'treɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	grouping of people or things 聚集; 集中
tap /tæp/ <i>v.</i>	knock gently on somebody or something 轻拍
diameter /daɪ'æmɪtə/ <i>n.</i>	straight line connecting the centre of a circle to two points on its sides 直径
reside /rɪ'zaɪd/ <i>v.</i>	live 居住
insure /ɪn'ʃʊə/ <i>v.</i>	buy insurance for protection 保险; 投保
staircase /'steəkeɪs/ <i>n.</i>	a set of stairs inside a building 楼梯
sweep /swi:p/ <i>v.</i>	extend in an unbroken line 延伸; 蜿蜒
enormity /ɪ'noʊməti/ <i>n.</i>	immense size 巨大; 极大
zigzag /'zɪgzæg/ <i>v.</i>	turn right and left alternately at sharp angles 曲折地前进
faintly /'feɪntli/ <i>adv.</i>	difficult to see, hear or smell 微弱地; 模糊地
contour /'kɒntʊə/ <i>n.</i>	the shape of the outer edges of something 轮廓; 外形
suspended /səs'pendɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	held in an undetermined or undecided state 被暂时搁置的
calcified /'kælsɪfaɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	hardened from the deposit of calcium salts 钙化的
eerie /'ɪəri/ <i>adj.</i>	causing a feeling of mystery and fear 怪异的
grotesque /grəʊ'tesk/ <i>adj.</i>	strangely distorted 奇形怪状的
awe /ɔ:/ <i>n.</i>	feeling of respect combined with fear or wonder 敬畏
entrance /'entrəns/ <i>n.</i>	opening, gate, passage, etc. by which one enters 入口; 通道
exploration /ˌeksplə'reɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	a journey of discovery or search 探险
temple /'templ/ <i>n.</i>	a building for religious worship 庙; 寺; 神殿
lime /laɪm/ <i>n.</i>	white substance obtained by heating limestone 石灰

from a ... standpoint  
geologist /dʒɪˈɒlədʒɪst/ n.

speleology /ˌspiːlɪˈɒlədʒɪ/ n.  
champion /ˈtʃæmpɪən/ n.

from the point of view of 从……立场看问题  
someone who studies the rocks, soil etc. that  
make up the Earth 地质学家  
scientific study and exploration of caves 洞穴学  
a winner of first prize in competition 冠军



On the edge of the sandstone peaks in Zhangjiajie are mountains draped with snow, mysterious misty valleys, dense forests, pristine lakes, and tens of thousands of underground caves. The most famous is Huanglong Cave ( Yellow Dragon Cave ) that covers 48 hectares of land. Yellow Dragon Cave is called an underground magic palace. In this cave, we can see “cave beyond cave, tower beyond tower, sky beyond sky, and mountain beyond mountain”. It was discovered by local villagers in 1983 and opened to tourists in 1984.

There are four layers, having one reservoir, two brooks, three waterfalls, four ponds, thirteen halls and ninety-six passages. Yellow Dragon Cave is 13 km in length. The biggest hall in it is 12,000 square meters which can hold 10,000 people. The cave is so big that it is in fact another world under the ground. Entering the cave, you will feel you are in a fairyland, beautiful and tranquil. All the beautiful things will fill your eyes full of wonder.

Huanglong Cave is filled with about 5,600 stalactites and stalagmites. It is probably the greatest concentration of them in China. Among them is a stalagmite called the Holy Needle and the Musical Column that plays eight musical scales when tapped. The Holy Needle is 19.2 m high but only 10cm in diameter. Legend tells that it protects the Dragon King who resides in the dark depths. Because of its value for tourism, the cave was insured in 1998 for 100 million yuan.



To make the tour more pleasing, the caverns have wide stone staircases that

sweep endlessly from one cavern to another. The staircases and walkways are tastefully lit to offer just enough light for walking. Because of the sheer enormity of the cave and its darkness, the light from the walkways and bridges zigzags off into the dark distance and faintly show the cave contours leaving you suspended in time and space. Colored lights are placed within and around the calcified rock formations. The shadows look eerie and grotesque at times, but leave you in awe of the natural beauty that took thousand of years to create. Most entrance halls and landings are also comfortably wide, and have inlaid stones much like you would find in modern outdoor gardens. It may be a long exploration due to the size of Huanglong Cave, but it certainly is not a difficult one.

Despite the recent discovery by local villagers, early history shows that the cave was once a temple. Left of the hall in the cave, there are three seated Buddha statues from the Ming dynasty. Now all of them are coated with a thick layer of lime deposits. From a scientific standpoint, geologists of the Britain Royal Geology Team considers Huanglong Cave covers all the contents of speleology, and is just the all-round champion among all the limestone caves in the world.

#### B. Questions for Reading Comprehension ( 阅读理解题 )

1. Why is Yellow Dragon Cave called an underground magic palace?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What are the two most well-known stalagmites in Huanglong Cave?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What is the legend behind the Holy Needle?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What looks eerie and grotesque at times inside the cave?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. How old are the three seated Buddha statues?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Why does the Britain Royal Geology Team consider Huanglong Cave the all-round champion among all the limestone caves in the world?  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Part VI Grammar Review ( 语法复习 ) :

#### Subject-verb Agreement ( 主谓一致 )

##### A. Grammar Explanations ( 语法解释 )

Subject-verb agreement relates to number agreement between the subject and the

verb. The basic subject-verb agreement rule is that if a subject is singular, its verb is also singular; if a subject is plural, its verb is also plural. The following items might present problems in subject-verb agreement. (主谓一致是指主语与谓语动词数的一致。主谓一致的基本规则是单数主语谓语动词用单数,复数主语谓语动词用复数。主谓一致中易混淆的主要难点如下:)

1. Indefinite pronoun or quantity as a subject(不定代词或数量词作主语)

anybody, somebody, everybody, nobody, everything, anything, something, nothing, each, either, neither 作主语时

Singular Verb (谓语动词用单数)	Sample Sentence (例句)
(1) anybody, somebody, everybody, nobody, everything, anything, something, nothing, each, either, neither 作主语时谓语动词用单数。	<p>A. Everyone has finished their shopping on Nanjing Road; it is time for the tour bus to leave. (所有人都结束了在南京路上的购物,是旅游巴士离开的时候了。)</p> <p>B. Anything in the store window is available at a discount. (橱窗中的东西都打折。)</p> <p>C. Nobody is going to do much traveling with such cold winter. (没人想在如此寒冷的冬天旅游。)</p> <p>D. Somebody wants to join our tour. He'll call back later. (有人想参加我们的旅游团。他待会儿会打电话来。)</p> <p>E. Either dress is fine with me. (两条裙子中任何一条都适合我。)</p>
(2) every/any/each/neither + of + noun 词组作定语修饰主语时,谓语动词用单数。	<p>F. Neither of the two traffic lights is working. (两盏交通灯都不运行。)</p> <p>G. Each of the students is responsible for taking notes while we visit Confucian Temple. (在我们参观孔庙时,两名学生都要负责记录。)</p>
(3) Expression of time, length, weight, money and distance usually require a singular verb. (表示时间、长度、重量、价值、距离的复数名词作主语时常被视为一个整体,谓语动词用单数。)	<p>H. Twenty dollars seems a reasonable price for that hat. (那顶帽子售价 20 美元很合理。)</p> <p>I. Two hours is a long time to wait for the bus. (乘公交车等两小时是很长的时间。)</p> <p>J. 93,000,000 miles is the distance from the sun to the earth. (93 000 000 英里是从太阳到地球的距离。)</p>

续表

Plural Verb (谓语动词用复数)	Sample Sentence (例句)
several, a few, few, others, both, many 作主语时谓语动词用复数	K. <u>Several people in my office are</u> thinking of going to Hangzhou this weekend. (我办公室的好些人打算本周末去杭州。) L. <u>Few mountain climbers have</u> successfully reached the peak of Mt. Everest. (很少登山者成功登上了珠穆朗玛峰。) M. <u>Both you and your wife are</u> welcome to go with us on the cruise. (欢迎你和你夫人加入我们去乘船旅游。) N. <u>Many tourists were</u> getting sleepy on the bus. (许多游客在巴士上昏昏欲睡。)
Singular or Plural Verb (谓语动词用单数或复数)	
Singular Verb (谓语动词用单数)	Plural Verb (谓语动词用单数或复数)
Some of the water <u>is not</u> clean. (有些水不干净。) Most of the lost money <u>was</u> recovered. (丢失的钱款大多被追回。) Two-fifths of the fruit <u>is</u> rotten. (五分之二的水果烂了。) A lot of information <u>is</u> updated weekly on the train schedule. (火车时刻表上许多信息每周更新。) The number of stars in the sky <u>seems</u> countless. (天上的星星数不胜数。)	O. Some of you <u>want</u> to stay behind if you get seasick. (如果你们中有人晕船,可以留下。) P. <u>Most of the passengers were</u> killed in the accident. (大多数乘客在交通事故中身亡。) Q. <u>Two-fifths of the tourists in our group</u> understand Chinese. (我们团中五分之二的游客懂汉语。) R. <u>A lot of his friends are</u> from America. (他的许多朋友来自美国。) S. <u>A number of people are</u> waiting to see you. (好些人等着见你。)

## Notes (注解)

- For “indefinite pronoun/quantity + of + noun”, the verb is determined by the noun phrase that follows. A singular noun takes a singular verb and a plural noun takes a plural verb. A list of regular expressions is give below. (不定代词或数量词 + of + 名词短语作主语时,谓语动词与 of 后面的名词词组的意义一致,单数名词谓语动词用单数,复数名词谓语动词用复数。常用此类词组如下表:)

some of	any of	none of	all of	most of	half of
a lot of	plenty of	a part of	a percentage of	a majority of	



- “Many” takes a plural verb while “many a/more than one + a singular noun” takes a singular verb. (many a 或 more than one + 单数名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数。)

Many tourists wish to return to the hotel for a good night's rest after sightseeing all day.

Many a tourist wishes to return to the hotel for a good night's rest after sightseeing all day. (在观光了一整天后,许多游客想回到宾馆好好休息一晚上。)

## 2. Compound subject(复合主语)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
not only ... but also (不仅……而且)	<u>Not only</u> John <u>but also</u> his sisters plan to visit London this summer. (不仅约翰还有他的姐妹们都打算今年夏天去伦敦旅游。)
neither ... nor(既不……也不)	<u>Neither</u> Susan <u>nor</u> her parents are going to ski when they visit the Alps. (苏珊和她的父母都不打算在他们游览阿尔卑斯山时滑雪。)
either ... or (不是……就是)	<u>Either</u> my father <u>or</u> my brothers are going to help pay for my vacation. (我的父亲或兄弟打算为我支付度假费用。)

### Note (注解)

- With a compound subject joined by “not only ... but also”, “neither ... nor”, “either ... or”, the verb agrees with the subject nearer to it. (“not only ... but also”, “neither ... nor”, “either ... or” 连接的并列主语,谓语动词与最接近它的主语一致。)

## 3. Inverted Subject (倒装结构的主语)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
there be (某处有某物)	<u>There is</u> a map of China on the wall. (墙上有张中国地图。) <u>There are</u> all kinds of interesting places to explore. (有各种各样的有趣地方等你去探索。)
here be (这是)	<u>Here are</u> two tickets that you purchased for your Roman holiday. (这是你购买的去罗马度假的两张票。) <u>Here is</u> my visa. (这是我的签证。)

### Note (注解)

- “There” or “here” can not be a subject. The verb in the sentence is determined by the subject that follows the verb. A singular subject takes a singular verb and a plural subject takes a plural verb. (there 或 here 不能作主语。此句子结构谓语的动词的单复数与最贴近它的主语一致。单数主语谓语的动词用单数,复数主语谓语的动词用复数。)

#### 4. Subject with a phrase or clause(带修饰语的主语)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
with prepositional phrase (带介词短语)	The weather in the southern states gets very hot during the summer. (夏天南部各州的气温很高。)
with a parenthesis(带插入语)	Mary, as well as her three friends, was invited to visit San Francisco for five days. (玛丽和她的三个朋友被邀请游览旧金山五天。)
with a relative clause (带定语从句)	Everyone who has been to San Francisco has heard of the Golden Gate Bridge. (每个去过旧金山的人都听说过金门大桥。)

### Note (注解)

- Sometimes a phrase or clause separates a subject from its verb. These structures do not affect the basic subject-verb agreement. A singular subject takes a singular verb and a plural subject takes a plural verb. A list of common parentheses is given below. (有时主语和谓语的动词之间插入词组或从句。这些插入成分不影响句子的主谓一致。主语如果是单数,谓语的动词用单数,主语如果是复数,谓语的动词也用复数。常用插入语见下表:)

as well as	followed by	along with	together with	with	like
in addition to	instead of	rather than	including	except	

#### 5. Gerund, clause or infinitive as the subject (动名词、从句或不定式作主语)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
gerund(动名词)	<u>Seeing is</u> believing. (眼见为实。)
infinitive(不定式)	<u>To master a foreign language is</u> easier if you are living in that foreign land. (如果你身处他国,掌握那国语言就会容易些。)
clause(从句)	<u>How close parents are to their children has</u> strong influence on the character of the children. (父母和孩子的亲密程度会对孩子的性格有重要影响。)

### Note(注解)

- A gerund, a clause or an infinitive used as the subject of the sentence requires a singular verb. (动名词、从句或不定式作主语时,谓语动词用单数。)

### B. Grammar Exercises (语法练习)

#### 1. Choose the correct answer in the brackets to complete the sentence.

- (1) Either the teacher or the students \_\_\_\_\_ (is, are) to decide on where their field trip will be this spring.
- (2) There \_\_\_\_\_ (is, are) all sorts of entertainment available in this city.
- (3) Three weeks \_\_\_\_\_ (was, were) allowed for planning the annual excursion to Mexico.
- (4) Not only Julie but also all of the grandchildren \_\_\_\_\_ (wants, want) to see Disneyland.
- (5) Only a tenth of the blind \_\_\_\_\_ (find, finds) a guide dog useful.
- (6) To get to know each of you and to travel with you \_\_\_\_\_ (has, have) been a privilege.
- (7) The happy song with those Latin rhythms \_\_\_\_\_ (makes, make) her music successful.
- (8) The lifeguard, with the help from others, \_\_\_\_\_ (is, are) looking for the missing child.
- (9) During a long trip, everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (shares, share) their most unforgettable travel experiences with the group.
- (10) Taking a long walk in the woods \_\_\_\_\_ (is, are) a perfect way to put your everyday worries behind you.
- (11) Doctor Richard, together with his wife and three children, \_\_\_\_\_ (is, are) going to arrive in Beijing this afternoon.

- (12) The biggest pyramid of all \_\_\_\_\_ (is, are) the Great Pyramid of Khufu and this is the only one among the seven wonders of world.

2. Write the correct form of the verb given in the brackets.

- (1) There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) no reason that we must leave right away.  
(2) John as well as I \_\_\_\_\_ (want) to see the Taj Mahal while we're in India.  
(3) Either Miss Brown or Jane \_\_\_\_\_ (be going to) the airport to meet our guest speaker from Japan.  
(4) Becoming a travel agent \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a great way to see the world.  
(5) Eighty percent of the rooms in this hotel \_\_\_\_\_ (be occupied) by foreigners during the Chinese New Year.  
(6) ¥2,500 \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a nice compensation for the delay of flight for one day.  
(7) While I was in Paris, some of the best food \_\_\_\_\_ (be found) in small out-of-the-way cafes.  
(8) Being rude to others \_\_\_\_\_ (create) hard feelings and leaves a poor impression.  
(9) Everything, including the best pieces of jewelry in the safe, \_\_\_\_\_ (be stolen).  
(10) One of the people in the tour group \_\_\_\_\_ (have to) return to America in time for an important meeting.  
(11) One of the earliest travel guide books \_\_\_\_\_ (be written) by Pausanias, a Greek, for Roman tourists in 170 A. D.  
(12) "Read thousands of books and travel thousands of miles" \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a maxim followed by ancient Chinese scholars in pursuit of knowledge.

3. Find and correct errors. Three sentences contain no errors.

- (1) There is two options for the flight out to Chicago; one o'clock in the morning, or ten o'clock in the morning.  
(2) The number of people who want to visit China are increasing.  
(3) A large number of countries is members of the United Nations.  
(4) Traveling on a tour group are easier than traveling by oneself.  
(5) Two-thirds of his spare time are spent studying maps on the Internet.  
(6) To see such a diverse group of visitors to our country is wonderful.  
(7) Many a travel agent have turned to starting his own travel bureau.

- (8) Most of the mountain peaks in the Himalayan range is covered with snow the year round.
- (9) Not only the fans but also the team's coach were shocked to win the game.
- (10) Neither the clerks nor the manager know when the tourist bus will arrive as it is stuck in snow.
- (11) The students, in addition to the teacher, are receiving special recognition for their excellent research.
- (12) One of the distinguishing features of a motel is that it is U-shaped or square with an inner courtyard that serves as the parking lot.
4. Complete the sentences with your own ideas, paying attention to the subject-verb agreement.
- Example:
- Most of the water in the world (is salt water).
- (1) A lot of advice our guide Joy gave us ...
- (2) A number of planes ... due to the bad weather.
- (3) The number of passengers affected by the delay of the planes ...
- (4) The last three days of our trip ...
- (5) Either the bus driver or the motorcycle rider ...
- (6) The people in the world ...
- (7) Some of the people ...
- (8) All of the travelers who used Xiong's Travel Agency. . .
- (9) There ... once we get to Hangzhou.
- (10) A percentage of travelers ... enjoy a quiet and relaxing vacation.

## Part VII Unit Review Exercises (单元综合练习)

### A. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

Exercise 1. Two of the words in each group are synonyms ( words with a similar meaning). Cross out the word that is not a synonym.

1. altitude sea-level elevation	2. unreliable traditional conventional	3. high-tech commercial advanced	4. incredible fascinating lightheaded
5. economical inexpensive unreliable	6. entire smooth complete	7. route tunnel track	8. non-stop high speed fast

**Exercise 2.** Circle the best word or expression to complete each sentence.

- Tourist: Are there any (smooth/soft) sleeper tickets available on that train?  
Tour Guide: You're (welcome/in luck). There are two tickets left.
- Tourist: Thank you for (booking/showing off) those tickets for me.  
Tour Guide: You're (welcome/in luck). I'm happy to do it.
- Taking the train to Tibet was (by the way/by far) the most incredible trip I've ever taken.
- Many people fill the streets as they travel to and from work during (rush/crowd) hour.
- If you feel (nostalgic/lightheaded), you should use the oxygen canister.
- Traveling from Beijing to Tianjin is a (relative/relatively) short distance.
- The Tibet train passes through the world's highest (tunnel/plateau).
- The clean dishes have been (stacked/streamlined) and put away.
- Karen: The first (commercial/commercially) maglev train was neither fast nor reliable.  
Mark: You can say (it/that) again!
- It's easier to (propel/multi-task) when if you take a train rather than drive a car.

### B. Dictation (听写)

First, listen to the entire paragraph to understand the main idea. Then listen to each sentence carefully and write down exactly what you hear on a separate piece of paper. Finally, listen to the whole paragraph one more time to check your sentences.

### C. Sentence combination (句子组合)

Compare the sentences below:

- (a) I would love to travel to Tibet because it is a fascinating place.

(b) I want to travel to Tibet even though it is a very remote place.

(c) I will travel to Tibet if you come with me.

Which sentence gives a condition?

Which sentence gives a reason?

Which sentence gives an unexpected or contradictory reason?

In sentence (a), “because” is used to give a reason.

In sentence (b), “even though” is used to give a concession.

In sentence (c), “if” is used to give a condition.

Complete the sentences below by giving a condition, reason, or concession.

1. They will travel by plane if \_\_\_\_\_.
2. They will travel by plane because \_\_\_\_\_.
3. They will travel by plane even though \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He prefers traveling by hard sleeper because \_\_\_\_\_.
5. He prefers traveling by hard sleeper even though \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The maglev train is expensive because \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A maglev train could be built from Shanghai to Beijing if \_\_\_\_\_.
8. If Mark and Karen take the train to Hohhot, \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Even though there is a dining car on the train, \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Because the bus is leaving at 8 a. m. sharp tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_.

#### D. Translation (翻译)

1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.

(1) A bullet train is streamlined and looks like a vehicle in a science fiction movie.

\_\_\_\_\_

(2) I wish we could take the maglev train before we leave China.

\_\_\_\_\_

(3) If my city had a maglev train, I could get to work much faster.

\_\_\_\_\_

(4) We are planning to take the train to Hohhot to visit a friend who is a teacher there.

\_\_\_\_\_

(5) If you go to Tibet, you ought to take the train so that you can enjoy the incredible scenery.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Translate the following sentences into English.

(1) 多数外国游客都对中国的铁路系统极感兴趣。

---

(2) 过去坐火车从北京到天津要 70 到 80 分钟,而现在乘坐高速火车只要 30 分钟就到了。

---

(3) 磁浮列车比传统火车更快更稳,但是它们的造价和维修费用都更贵。

---

(4) 旅游专列在游客众多时运行。

---

(5) 中国目前正在进行一项用高速铁路连接一些主要城市的巨大工程。

---



# Unit 8

## Flight Delays and Itinerary Flexibility (航班延误与旅程变化)

In this unit, Joy helps her group deal with the situation of an oversold flight. She negotiates the compensation with the airline on behalf of her guests and makes sure that every group member's needs are taken care of.

## Part I Introduction (介绍):

### Getting Started (入门练习)

#### A. Warm-up Exercises (预习)

1. To prepare for this unit, do some Internet research and see if you can find the following information:

- (1) Use Google to search why major airlines oversell their airplane tickets (using keyword “oversold flight”). List three reasons:

---



---

- (2) What might motivate some passengers to volunteer to delay their flight in an oversold situation? List three reasons:

---



---

- (3) What are the compensations offered to volunteers by the following international airlines? You may choose three airlines from the following list to do your research.

Air Canada	Delta Air Lines
Air China	China Southern Airlines
Air France	Japan Airlines
American Airlines	Korean Air
British Airways	Singapore Airlines
Cathay Pacific	Southwest Airlines
China Eastern Airlines	United Airlines

2. Share your findings with other students in the class. Compare and discuss which airline offers the most attractive compensations to passengers who delay their flight in an oversold situation.

#### B. Joy's Introductory Speech (林欢的开场白): Farewell (告别)

Joy and her tourist group have just arrived at Shanghai Pudong International Airport. The tourists are tired but excited — they have just had an unforgettable tour of China, and now they are on their way home. Joy and the tourists have become friends in the past two weeks, and they are sad to say goodbye to each other. After the guests have checked in their luggage, Joy and the group sit down in the waiting

area at the airport.

### Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

unforgettable /ˌʌnfə'getəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	remarkable in a way that cannot be forgotten; memorable 难忘的
reluctant /rɪ'lʌktənt/ <i>adj.</i>	unwilling; showing no enthusiasm to do sth. 不情愿的
open mindedness	accepting of different ideas, cultures and opinions 思想开明; 胸襟开阔
maxim /'mæksɪm/ <i>n.</i>	a well-known phrase or saying that has some proven truth to it 座右铭
in pursuit of	chasing after sth.; to striving for sth. 追寻; 追求
globalized /'gləʊbəlaɪzd/ <i>adj.</i>	becoming international 全球化的; 国际的
advocate /'ædvəkeɪt/ <i>v.</i>	recommend or support something 提倡; 宣扬

“Hi everyone, I cannot believe we have to say goodbye to each other already. It's been a privilege to get to know each of you and to travel with you. Thank you so much for giving me the opportunity to introduce China to you and show you some of the best known historical sites in my country. You are such great travelers because you not only take pleasure in learning about other cultures, but also extend friendship wherever you go. Your positive attitude, patience and flexibility have helped me do my job as a guide, and your open-mindedness and sense of humor have made our trip much more enjoyable.

“During our long bus trips, you each shared your most unforgettable travel experiences with the group. Your fascinating life stories have enriched my knowledge about the world and international travel. Yes, I have been your guide on this trip, but you have also guided me with your outlook on life and your observations about different cultures. I'm inspired to learn more about other cultures through travel just like you.

“‘Read thousands of books and travel thousands of miles’ is a maxim followed by ancient Chinese scholars in pursuit of knowledge. Today, more and more Chinese have realized how important ‘travel study’ is in a globalized

world. ‘Learning through seeing and hearing’ is becoming a popular trend for young people and it is promoted by educators and parents as well as political leaders.

“At our farewell banquet last night, many of you made kind comments about my job performance and invited me to visit your country someday. Your encouragement will inspire me to better serve foreign guests in the future, and your invitation makes me feel more excited about visiting the United States. I’m working hard to save for a dream trip that includes the United States. I’m really glad that I have already made friends from the country that I will one day visit ...”

### C. Listening for the Main Idea (泛听)

Listen to Joy’s speech carefully, and then answer the following two questions.

1. Why does Joy think her guests are great travelers?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What did the guests do during their bus trips?

\_\_\_\_\_

### D. Filling in the Blanks (填空)

Now listen to Joy’s speech again and fill in the blanks.

“Hi everyone, I cannot believe we have to say goodbye to each other already. It’s been a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to get to know each of you and to travel with you. Thank you so much for giving me the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to introduce China to you and show you some of the best (3) \_\_\_\_\_ historical sites in my country. You are such great travelers because you not only take (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in learning about other cultures, but also (5) \_\_\_\_\_ friendship wherever you go. Your positive attitude, patience and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ have helped me do my job as a guide, and your (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and sense of humor have made our trip much more enjoyable.

“During our long bus trips, you each shared your most (8) \_\_\_\_\_ travel experiences with the group. Your (9) \_\_\_\_\_ life stories have enriched my knowledge about the world and international travel. Yes, I have been your guide on this trip, but you have also guided me with your (10) \_\_\_\_\_ on life and your (11) \_\_\_\_\_ about different cultures. I’m inspired to learn more about other cultures through travel just like you.

“‘Read thousands of books and travel thousands of miles’ is a (12) \_\_\_\_\_ followed by ancient Chinese scholars in (13) \_\_\_\_\_ of

knowledge. Today, more and more Chinese have realized how important ‘travel study’ is in a (14) \_\_\_\_\_ world. ‘Learning through seeing and hearing’ is becoming a popular trend for young people and it is (15) \_\_\_\_\_ by educators and parents as well as political leaders.

“At our farewell banquet last night, many of you made kind comments about my job (16) \_\_\_\_\_ and invited me to visit your country someday. Your encouragement will inspire me to better serve foreign guests in the future, and your invitation makes me feel more excited about visiting the United States. I’m working hard to save for a dream trip that includes the United States. I’m really glad that I have already made friends from the country that I will one day visit ...”

### E. Listening for Details (精听)

After you have listened to Joy’s speech several times, answer the following questions.

1. What does Joy thank her guests for?
2. What does Joy think has helped her do her job as a tour guide?
3. Does Joy like her guests’ life stories? How do you know?
4. Which ancient Chinese maxim is becoming popular again among young Chinese people?
5. Why does Joy feel more excited about visiting the United States now?

## Part II Conversation 1 (对话1): Oversold Flight(超卖航班)

### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

interrupt /ˌɪntəˈrʌpt/ v.	stop someone in the middle of an action 打断; 干扰
oversold /ˌəʊvəˈsəʊld/ adj.	when too many tickets are sold for seats available 超卖
voucher /ˈvaʊtʃə(r)/ n.	a card, token or other document that can be exchanged for goods and services in place of money 票(金)券; 凭 证(单)
reschedule /riːˈʃedjuːl/ v.	change a schedule 改变行程(计划)

*Joy’s speech is interrupted by an Eastern Airlines announcement.*

“Attention passengers of Eastern Airlines Flight 538. Due to an oversold

situation, we are now asking for volunteers to travel on a later flight. We offer ¥2,500 cash compensation to passengers who volunteer to fly later. If you can delay your flight, please come to Window #5 to speak with our representative. We apologize for the inconvenience this may cause you and appreciate your cooperation.”

*As Joy and the group try to figure out the situation, an Eastern Airlines representative comes to talk to Joy.*

Linda: Excuse me, are you the tour guide of this American tourist group?

Joy: Yes, I am. My name is Joy. You are ...?

Linda: My name is Linda. I'm the Eastern Airlines Customer Service Manager here at Pudong International Airport. As you've heard from the announcement, we have an oversold flight today and we are asking for volunteers to fly later. We need over 20 volunteers. Since there are 22 people in your group, I wonder if your guests would be willing to delay the flight for one day. We'll do our best to compensate your guests for the inconvenience this may cause ...

Joy: Okay, Linda. Let's talk with the guests and see what they want to do.

Linda: Great! Thank you for your help, Joy.

*Joy and Linda have explained the situation to the group, and now the tourists need to make a decision.*

Linda: For compensation, we will pay each volunteer ¥2,500 which is about \$380 according to today's currency exchange rate. Or, you could accept our travel voucher instead of the cash. In this case, you can receive ¥3,500, which can be transferred to someone other than yourself.

Michael: This sounds tempting. My wife and I are not in a hurry to go back. As a matter of fact, we had hoped to have more time to go shopping in Shanghai. We only had about three free hours to shop, and that was not even close to the time we needed.

Nancy: Yes, I don't have enough souvenirs for all my relatives and friends. I'd love to have an extra day and extra money to shop for gifts.

Paul: This actually is good news rather than bad news. I hoped that we could see more around Shanghai. Joy mentioned that Xitang, her hometown, is a famous ancient water town near Shanghai, but because of our tight schedule, we did not have time to go. If we

- stay for another day, will we have a chance to visit Xitang?
- Joy: Oh, yes! It takes a half day bus trip to visit Xitang. Linda, if our group volunteers to delay a day, it would save the airline the trouble of finding enough individual volunteers. Would the airline be willing to provide us with transportation to visit Xitang?
- Linda: Let me contact the general manager to see if we can arrange that. Do you have any other questions?
- Mike: Would you let us pick seats before other passengers on the next flight?
- Lisa: Good question, Mike. As far as I know, it's one of the usual incentives airlines give to volunteers.
- Linda: Absolutely! That's not a problem. We'll let your group pick seats first tomorrow.
- Darren: Sounds good to me. My wife and I would also like to stay for another day. How do we reclaim our luggage?
- Linda: Your luggage will be sent to your hotel room if you need it tonight. Otherwise, we'll take care of it and you won't need to check it in again tomorrow.
- Joy: So, are we all in agreement to stay an extra day?
- Everyone: Yes, we are!
- After Linda has contacted her general manager, she shares the information with the group.*
- Linda: Good news! Our general manager has agreed to provide you with the airline's guest bus for your trip to Xitang. In addition, we will provide each of you with a meal voucher which is worth \$30. You may use it to buy food in any food shop at Pudong Airport.
- Lisa: Sweet! What a nice addition to a great trip!
- Linda: I really appreciate your cooperation. On behalf of Eastern Airlines, I'd like to thank everyone in this group. I hope we'll have the opportunity to serve you again in the future. Have a great day!

### B. Comprehension (综合理解)

Listen to the conversation again and decide if the following is True (T) or False (F).

- \_\_\_1. The airline offers cash compensation to passengers who volunteer to fly later.

- \_\_\_ 2. The travel voucher offered by the airline can be used by another person.
- \_\_\_ 3. The tourists had a free day to go shopping in Shanghai and they had purchased enough souvenirs for their relatives and friends.
- \_\_\_ 4. The tourists had already visited Joy's hometown.
- \_\_\_ 5. The tourists may use the airline's meal voucher to buy food anywhere in Shanghai.

Now, rewrite the false statements to make them true.

---



---



---

### C. Speaking Activities (口语练习)

For the following speaking activities, form groups of six.

1. Role play the conversation and try to use some of your own vocabulary to express the same idea.
2. Create a conversation on the topic of "Oversold Flight". Pretend to be a tour guide, an airline customer service manager and four tourists who are considering delaying their flight. In the conversation, the tour guide helps the manager and the tourists reach an agreement on the compensations.
3. In your group, discuss the pros and cons of volunteering to delay a flight, and then share your ideas with the class.

## Part III Conversation 2 (对话2): Changing a Flight (调换航班)

### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

comparable /'kɒmpərəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	similar; as good as; equal 可比较的
accommodation /ə,kɒmə'deɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	usually used in plural: services supplied for convenience and/or need, such as lodging, food, flight, train, etc. 膳宿; 方便设施
transfer /træns'fɜ:(r)/ <i>n. /v.</i>	move from one place to another; change of planes, trains, etc. 转机; 换乘火车



upgrade /'ʌpgreɪd/ n. /v.	improve quality of sth.; exchange sth. for sth. better 升级
facility /fə'sɪlətɪ/ n.	plural form; facilities; something designed to provide a service or fulfill a need 设施

20 minutes later, Robert Smith, one of the group members comes to talk with Joy.

Robert: Joy, I don't think I'll be able to delay the return. I just contacted my company to reschedule a business meeting, but it's just not possible. This meeting is very important to my company. I'm sorry ...

Joy: Don't be sorry. We should apologize for the inconvenience this has caused you. Let's go talk to Linda, and I'm sure she can arrange something.

Joy explains the problem to Linda.

Linda: Mr. Smith, there is one other flight that can get you home in time for your meeting. It's on an airline with which Eastern Airlines have a ticketing agreement. The flight will provide you with comparable accommodation.

Robert: Is that a direct flight?

Linda: No, you will need to change planes in Vancouver, Canada. The transfer takes about four hours. The compensation for the inconvenience will also be ¥2,500.

Joy: When does the flight arrive in LA?

Linda: It will arrive at about 9:00 p. m. if there is no delay in Vancouver. Eastern Airlines will provide a \$30 meal voucher to use at Vancouver Airport.

Robert: I'd rather get home earlier. I have to prepare for an important meeting the following morning.

Joy: Linda, if Robert took the other flight, would you upgrade his seat from the economy class to business class? If he can have a more comfortable seat, he'll probably feel better rested when he is back for work.

Linda: Mr. Smith, would that make you more willing to fly with the other airline?

Robert: Maybe. But ...I won't be able to get someone to pick me up at the

airport at that late hour.

Linda: We can give you \$30 transportation credit so that you can go home by taxi. You may also use the Business Center facilities for free during your wait at the Canadian airport.

Robert: It sounds like you really need my cooperation to solve your oversold problem. Okay, you got it. I will take the other flight.

Linda: I really appreciate your help. Whenever you need to travel to China in the future, please consider taking the Eastern Airlines again. Thank you so much, Mr. Smith! And thank you for your help, Joy.

Robert and Joy: You are welcome.

Robert: Joy, I'm happy with the arrangements.

Joy: Great! Thank you for your cooperation, and Good luck with your business meeting!

### B. Questions for Comprehension and Critical Thinking (综合理解和逻辑思考)

Pair up with another student and answer the following questions together. Then, discuss your answers with the whole class.

1. Why will Robert not be able to delay his flight with the rest of the group?
2. Why does Linda suggest a particular alternate airline to Robert?
3. What accommodations does the alternate flight provide?
4. Why do you think Robert is willing to accept the alternate flight although he will have to change planes in Vancouver with that flight?
5. Do you think Linda is a capable manager? Why do you think so?
6. Do you think Robert will travel with Eastern Airlines again? Why or why not?
7. What compensations do you think are most attractive to travelers?
8. If you were Robert, would you accept the alternative flight? Why or why not?

### C. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

Fill in the blanks using vocabulary from Joy's speech and the two conversations in this unit. Use each of the words below one time.

accommodations	flexibility	globalized	incentives
inconvenience	interrupted	upgrade	open-mindedness

1. The manager is having an important meeting with a client and can not be \_\_\_\_\_ right now.
2. If the \_\_\_\_\_ are attractive enough, the airline will be able to get enough

people to volunteer to delay their flight.

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ for this tour are not comparable to the accommodations we had on our last tour.
4. My guests will reconsider your offer if you \_\_\_\_\_ their seats from the economy class to the business class.
5. On behalf of my company, I apologize for the \_\_\_\_\_ this change of schedule may cause you.
6. This alternate itinerary provides some \_\_\_\_\_ in case of unexpected weather changes.
7. She appreciates the cultures of the countries that she visits. I'm very impressed with her \_\_\_\_\_.
8. It's very important to have foreign language skills in this \_\_\_\_\_ world.

## Part IV Intensive Reading(精读): Have a Good Trip! (一路顺风)

### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

tail wind	a wind blowing in the same direction as that of the course of an aircraft, a ship, a vehicle, etc. 顺风; a wish for luck with a trip 旅行顺利
keep their fingers crossed <i>idiom.</i>	wish for luck for someone or sth.; hope for a good outcome for sb. or sth. 祈祷成功; 祝愿
temporary /'tempəreri/ <i>adj.</i>	for a limited time; short-term 暂时的
frustrating /'frʌstreɪtɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	exasperating; sth. difficult to do and it tends to cause a person to lose patience 困惑的
paramount /'pærəmaʊnt/ <i>adj.</i>	greatest in importance or significance 至关重要的
cancellation /kænsəl'eɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	termination; deletion 取消
entitle /ɪn'taɪtl/ <i>v.</i>	grant sb. the right to have or to do sth. 使有资格; 给予权力(称号)

creativity /ˌkriːeɪˈtɪvəti/ <i>n.</i>	the ability to think of new ways of doing things; originality; resourcefulness 创造力
potentially /pəʊˈtenʃəli/ <i>adv.</i>	having future possibility 潜在的

“Yí lù Shùn Fēng! (Have a favorable wind throughout the journey!)” is how “have a good trip” is said in Chinese. When people travel, they hope to have a tail wind all the way. Especially when they take an international trip and travel on multiple airlines, they’ll keep their fingers crossed that they get to their destinations on time without unexpected interruptions. Travel agencies understand how important it is for travelers to get the best connecting flights in terms of time and convenience. Therefore, when planning an itinerary, travel agents will carefully arrange every leg of the journey especially regarding the flight transfers. This way, their customers will have a smooth journey.

However, like many things in life, a well-planned journey may get temporarily interrupted by a variety of factors, both natural and/or human. Flights may get delayed or cancelled due to severe weather conditions, mechanical problems, over booking, or other factors. To make the situation worse, the delay or cancellation of one flight tends to cause the passenger to miss the next flight(s) in the planned journey. In such a frustrating situation, it is hard for a passenger to continue the trip in a pleasant mood.

Customer satisfaction is of paramount importance in the airline industry. In case of delay or cancellation of flights, airlines will do everything possible to help passengers get their travel back on track with as little inconvenience as possible. Especially when the delay or cancellation is the airline’s fault, the airline will usually be quite generous and flexible in offering compensations and will make sure that travelers have complete and timely information about their options.

Take oversold flights for example. There tends to be a certain number of passengers who do not actually board the flights that they are booked on. Therefore, almost every major airline sells more seats than it physically has on an aircraft to avoid financial loss brought about by “no-shows”. However, when more passengers show up than expected, there won’t be enough seats available for everyone who is booked on the flight.

In the case of overbooking, the airline will first ask passengers to

volunteer to take a later flight. Only when there are not enough volunteers will the airline bump passengers off the oversold flight. In either case, a passenger who must take a later flight is entitled to compensation.

A tour guide should know the rights of passengers and be familiar with airline policies and practices in the event of a delay or cancellation; only then can he or she best negotiate the compensation on behalf of his or her customers. With a little creativity, an experienced tour guide can help travelers turn a potentially bad situation into a positive experience and help his or her guests smile all the way to the end of their journey

### B. Class Discussion (班级讨论)

1. Can airlines avoid overbooking passengers for their flights? Why or why not?
2. In case of flight delay or cancellation, what should a tour guide do to help travelers “smile all the way to the end of their journey”? Do you have any additional idea besides the ones mentioned in the reading?

### C. Writing Exercises (写作练习)

1. Explain five types of compensation major airlines may offer to passengers who volunteer to take a later flight.
2. Write a short narrative essay (two to three paragraphs) about your most unforgettable travel experience. Make sure your story tells the reader important details from the beginning to the end. End with your reflections or comments about the experience.

## Part V Reading Passage (泛读):

### Splendid China 8: The Potala Palace (锦绣中华 8: 布达拉宫)

#### A. Vocabulary & Text (词汇与课文)

divine /dɪ'vaɪn/ *adj.*

monk /mʌŋk/ *n.*

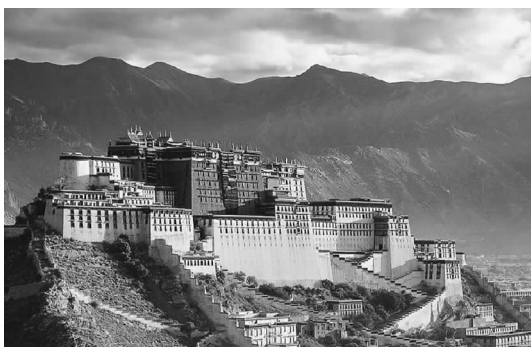
administrator /əd'mɪnɪstreɪtə/ *n.*

of, from or like God 上帝或神的

member of an all-male religious group who lives in a monastery 修士; 僧侣

person responsible for managing affairs 管理人员; 行政人员

pray /preɪ/ <i>v.</i>	offer thanks or make requests known to God 祈祷; 祷告
tomb /tu:m/ <i>n.</i>	place dug in the ground to bury a dead body 坟;墓
gleaming /'gli:mɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	shining 闪闪发光
rooftop /'ru:ftɒp/ <i>n.</i>	the upper surface of a roof 屋顶
destroy /dɪs'trɔɪ/ <i>n.</i>	damage so badly that it no longer exists or works 摧 毁;毁坏
reign /reɪn/ <i>n.</i>	rule of a king or queen 君主的统治
craftsman /'krɑ:ftsmən/ <i>n.</i>	skilled workman, especially one who makes things by hand 能工巧匠
secure /sɪ'kjʊə/ <i>adj.</i>	safe; protected 安全的;受保护的
fortress /'fɔ:trɪs/ <i>n.</i>	a large strong building used for defending an important place 要塞;堡垒
living quarters	housing available for people to live in 住处
divide /dɪ'vaɪd/ <i>v.</i>	split or break into parts 分开;分隔
gold-plated /'gəʊld'pleɪtɪd/ <i>a.</i>	a method of depositing a thin layer of gold onto the surface of another metal 镀金的;包金的
scripture /'skriptʃə/ <i>n.</i>	holy writings of a religion 经文;经典
chapel /'tʃæpəl/ <i>n.</i>	small building or room used for Christian worship 小 教堂
shrine /fraɪn/ <i>n.</i>	place that is regarded as holy 圣地;圣祠
ceremony /'serɪməni/ <i>n.</i>	formal act performed on a religious or public occasion 典礼;仪式
lunar month	a period of 28 or 29 days between one new moon and the next 阴历农历月
precious /'preʃəs/ <i>adj.</i>	of great value 贵重的;宝贵的
document /'dɒkjʊmənt/ <i>n.</i>	paper, form, book, etc. giving information, evidence or proof of something 文件;公文;文献
masterpiece /'mɑ:stəpi:s/ <i>n.</i>	a high quality work of art, writing or music 杰作;名 著
heritage /'herɪtɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i>	cultural achievements that have been passed on from earlier generations 文化遗产
in general	as a rule; usually 通常;照例



Thirteen stories high, with over a thousand rooms, the Potala Palace sits atop Red Hill in the Tibet Autonomous Region's Capital City Lhasa. It is the symbol of Tibet, and to many, a divine and famous sight. The Potala Palace was first the winter palace of the Dalai Lama. In addition, it was

the government seat of Tibet. It housed a school for religious training of monks and administrators, and was one of Tibet's major sacred places. Believers would travel to Lhasa and pray to the tombs of past Dalai Lamas. Its huge white walls draw attention to its location high up in the mountains. The gleaming golden rooftops can be seen from afar.

In 631 AD, the great Tibetan King, Songtsen Gampo began to construct the Potala Palace, but it was nearly destroyed by war and by fire. Later it was rebuilt and a new structure was added. Construction of the present palace began in 1645 during the reign of the fifth Dalai Lama; by 1648 "the White Palace" was completed. "The Red Palace" was added between 1690 and 1694; its construction required the labors of more than 7,000 workers and 1,500 artists and craftsman. Because of its position high atop a hill, it was secure enough to be used as a military fortress until the mid-18th century. Although a summer palace was built at Norbulingka for the Dalai Lama, the Potala was used as the winter living quarters.

The palace is divided into two main sections. The upper "Red Palace" served a religious function, housing the living quarters of the Dalai Lama. It contains the gold-plated tombs of eight previous Dalai Lamas, a library containing religious scriptures, and chapels and shrines containing thousands of Buddhist sculptures. The second main section, known as "the White Palace", has a printing press. Here, all ceremonies were held. A smaller building, known as the Yellow Building, housed giant *thankas* (colorful Tibetan religious painting on fabric), which were hung across the south face of the palace during the last day of the second lunar month. The Potala is a treasure-house of the best Tibetan artistic works and precious relics. The Potala Palace houses many iron, bronze, gold and silver relics, and weapons from the Tubo Kingdom. There are also articles from the same period, including leather,

textile, paper, porcelain and carved stone goods, gems, seals and the golden documents issued by emperors to the Dalai Lamas.

The stone walls are impressive. Measuring 100 meters in height, 400 meters east to west and 350 meters north to south, the inward-sloping stone walls are between three and five meters thick. The Potala Palace is not only a masterpiece of Tibetan architecture. It is also a reflection of Tibetan history and culture, and an important part of the heritage of China. In 1961 the Potala Palace was listed as a national cultural site under state protection. The palace was repaired in 1989 with funds provided by the central government. In 1994 it was included in the world heritage list by UNESCO.

### B. Questions for Reading Comprehension (阅读理解题)

1. What makes the Potala Palace a divine and famous sight to many?

---

2. What is the Potala Palace named after?

---

3. Provide a brief history of the Potala Palace.

---

4. What functions do “the Red Palace” serve?

---

5. Why is the Potala Palace considered so valuable?

---

6. Why is the Potala Palace considered a masterpiece of Tibetan architecture?

---

## Part VI Grammar Review (语法复习):

### Inversion (倒装句)

#### A. Grammar Explanations (语法解释)

The normal word order in English is “subject + verb”. Inversion refers to the change of the word order of a sentence, when the verb or an auxiliary comes before the subject. The function of inversion is usually for emphasis. There are two types of inversion: full inversion and partial inversion. (英语的常规语序是“主语 + 谓语动词”。倒装是指句子改变了常规语序, 谓语动词或助动词在先, 主语在后。倒装通常是为了强调。倒装分两类: 全部倒装和部分倒装。)



### 1. Full Inversion (全部倒装)

In full inversion, the verb goes before the subject. Full inversion after adverb of position and direction. (全部倒装结构是谓语动词在主语前。地点或方向副词位于句首全部倒装。)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
there (那里)	A. <u>There</u> goes the bell. (铃响了。) B. <u>There</u> will come a time when Grandma is too old to take care of herself. (祖母年纪太大难以照顾自己的日子总会到来。)
here (这里)	C. <u>Here</u> is your train ticket. (这是你的火车票。) D. <u>Here</u> comes the bus. (公交车来了。)
Adverbs of position and direction (地点或方向副词)	E. <u>Up</u> goes the price of airfare during the major Chinese holidays. (在中国的主要(法定)假日里,机票价格上涨。) F. <u>In</u> rushed the crowd as soon as they opened the door. (他们一打开门,人群就冲了进来。) G. <u>On the top of the hill</u> stood an old pine tree. (山顶矗立着一棵老松树。)

### Notes (注解)

- When adverbs or adverbial expressions of position and direction are placed at the beginning of a sentence, full inversion is used. This is mainly a rhetorical device used in descriptions. (当表示地点或方向的副词或词组位于句首时,句子需全部倒装。这主要是出于修辞手段上的需要。)
- Initial adverb of position and direction is usually followed by certain intransitive verbs such as “be, come, go, sit, stand, lie” and etc. (表示地点或方向的副词置于句首时,谓语动词通常是表示运动的不及物动词如 be, come, go, sit, stand, lie 等。)
- If the subject is a personal pronoun, no inversion is used. (如果主语是人称代词,则不能用全部倒装。)

There she goes.

Here it is.

### 2. Partial Inversion (部分倒装)

Partial inversion involves putting an auxiliary verb before the subject and the verb. (部分倒装语序的结构是:“助动词/情态词 + 主语 + 动词”。)

## (1) Partial inversion in questions (疑问句部分倒装)

The most frequently used form of partial inversion in English is questions. (疑问句是英语中最常用的部分倒装句。)

## Sample Sentence (例句)

- A. **Have you been** to China before? (你以前去过中国吗?)  
 B. **Can you tell** me the way to the subway? (你能否告诉我去乘地铁的路吗?)  
 C. Where **are you staying**? (你现在住哪儿?)  
 D. You are from France, **aren't you**? (你来自法国,是吗?)

## (2) Partial inversion after a negative adverbial (否定词位于句首部分倒装)

Negative Adverbial (否定词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
phrases with “no” or “not” (no 或 not 开头的词组)	<p>A. <b>At no time</b> <b>did she get</b> permission to go on a vacation by herself. (无论何时她都不会得到允许去单独度假。)</p> <p>B. <b>Under no circumstances</b> <b>will I let</b> you drive after drinking so much wine. (我绝不会让你在喝了这么多酒后开车。)</p> <p>C. <b>No sooner</b> <b>had the game begun</b> than it started to rain heavily. (比赛刚开始就下起了大雨。)</p> <p>D. <b>Not until</b> she took up rock climbing <b>did Jane overcome</b> her fear of heights. (直到珍妮从事了攀岩她才克服了恐高症。)</p>
not only (不仅)	E. <b>Not only</b> <b>is Amy</b> a great dancer but she is also an amazing professor. (艾米不仅是个出色的舞蹈家,还是个很有魅力的教授。)
never (从未)	F. <b>Never</b> <b>have we seen</b> such a breathtaking view. (我们还从未见过这样令人叹为观止的景色。)
hardly/scarcely (几乎不)	<p>G. <b>Hardly</b> <b>had we got up</b> when the phone started ringing. (我们刚起床电话就响了。)</p> <p>H. <b>Scarcely</b> <b>had he left the hotel</b> when it started to snow. (他一离开旅馆就下雪了。)</p>
seldom (很少, 难得)	I. <b>Seldom</b> <b>does it rain</b> in the Sahara. (撒哈拉沙漠很少下雨。)

续表

Negative Adverbial (否定词)	Sample Sentence (例句)
little (少到几乎没有)	J. <u>Little did I know</u> how much the train fare would increase before the holiday. (我几乎不知道假期前火车票会涨多少。)
only (仅在……情况下)	K. <u>Only later did they learn</u> of this terrible traffic accident. (直到后来他们才了解到这场可怕的交通事故。) L. <u>Only after he arrived at the airport did John look</u> for his passport. (约翰到了机场才开始找护照。)

## Notes (注解)

- If a negative adverbial comes after the subject, there is no inversion, but if the negative adverb comes before the subject, an inversion is required. Inverted sentence sounds more formal and gives more emphasis on the negative effect. (如果否定词在主语后,不需要倒装。只有否定词开头的句子才需要倒装。倒装句更强调否定含义,较多见正式文体。)

Never have we seen such a breathtaking view.

= We have never seen such a breathtaking view.

Scarcely had he left the hotel when it started to rain.

= We had scarcely left the hotel when it started to rain.

Little did I know how much the train fare would increase before the holiday.

= I knew little how much the train fare would increase before the holiday.

- The phrases with “no or not” include: no sooner ... than, on no account, at no time, in no circumstances, in no way, by no means, no longer, not until, nowhere, etc. (常见的含否定词的词组包括: no sooner ... than, on no account, at no time, in no circumstances, in no way, by no means, no longer, not until, nowhere 等。)
- When “not until ...” or “only ...” introduces a clause, inversion is used in the main clause but not the subordinate clause. (当 not until ... 或 only ... 引出主从句时,主句倒装但从句不倒装。)

Not until she took up rock climbing did she overcome her fear of heights.

Only after he arrived at the airport did John look for his passport.

- (3) Partial inversion after “so” and “as”, “neither” and “nor” (so, as, neither, no 位于句首部分倒装)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
so (同样, 也)	A. Parking is a great problem in the city and <u>so is the traffic</u> . (停车是城市的大问题, 交通同样是大问题。) B. — Joy can speak English and Japanese. (乔伊能说英语和日语。) — <u>So can Tim</u> . (蒂姆也能。)
as (同样)	C. To promote tourism, the airlines continued their low fare program, <u>as did some big travel companies</u> . (为了促进旅游, 航空公司和一些大旅游公司一样, 都在继续他们的低价促销计划。)
neither (也没有, 也不)	D. — I have never been to Tibet. (我从未去过西藏。) — <u>Neither have I</u> . (我也没有去过。) E. If you won't go, <u>neither will I</u> . (如果你不去, 我也不去。)
nor (也没有, 也不)	F. — John doesn't like cheese. (约翰不喜欢奶酪。) — <u>Nor do I</u> . (我也不喜欢。)

### Notes (注解)

- “So” or “as” is used to express agreement while “neither” or “nor” is used to express disagreement. (so 或 as 说明前面所指的情况也适应另一人或物, neither 或 nor 说明前面所指的情况不适应另一人或物。)
  - Note the agreement of tense and auxiliary verb in this structure. (注意该结构的时态和助动词一致问题。)
- (4) Partial inversion after “so ... that ...”, “such ... that ...” (so ... that ... 或 such ... that ... 位于句首部分倒装)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
A. so ... that ... (如此……以至于)	A. <u>So difficult was the book that</u> I gave up reading after a few pages. (这本书如此之难, 我只读了几页就读不下去了。) B. <u>So quickly did he run that</u> the others couldn't catch up with him. (他跑得飞快, 无人能赶上他。)
such ... that ... (如此……以致)	C. <u>Such was their excitement that</u> they began to jump and shout. (他们激动得又跳又叫。) D. <u>To such a degree did Mary like the pearl that</u> she wanted to have another one just like it. (玛丽如此喜欢这枚珍珠, 以致还想要一枚完全相同的珍珠。)

### Note (注解)

- When adjective and adverbial phrases starting with “so” and “such” are moved to the beginning of a sentence for emphatic effect, partial inversion is used in the main clause but not the result clause. (“so + 形容词/副词”或“such + 名词”结构放在句首表示强调时,主句需部分倒装,结果从句不倒装。)

So difficult was the book that I gave up reading after a few pages.

= The book was so difficult that I gave up reading after a few pages.

To such a degree did Mary like the pearl that she wanted to have another one just like it.

= Mary liked the pearl to such a degree that she wanted to have another one just like it.

#### (5) Partial inversion with “as, though” (as, though 位于句首部分倒装)

	Sample Sentence (例句)
as (虽然, 尽管)	A. <u>Expensive as the plane fare is</u> , I still plan to go to Hainan this holiday. (尽管机票昂贵, 我仍计划这个节假去海南。)
though (虽然, 尽管)	B. <u>Hot though it was</u> , they continued with their work. (虽然很热, 但是他们继续工作。)

### Note (注解)

- Adverbial clause of concession introduced by “as” or “though” at the beginning requires an inversion. The pattern is “predicative/adverb + as/though + subject + verb”. (as 或 though 位于句首引出的让步从句需倒装, 其结构为“表语/状语 + as/though + 主语 + 谓语”。)

#### (6) Partial inversion with unreal conditional clauses (省略 if 的非真实条件从句部分倒装)

Sample Sentence (例句)
A. <u>Were it</u> not for the storm, we would make it to Beijing in a matter of hours. (要不是因为暴风雨, 我们肯定会在几小时内赶到北京。)
B. <u>Had we taken</u> your advice, we surely would have had a better vacation in Paris. (如果采纳你的建议, 我们在巴黎的假日一定会过得更好。)

**Note (注解)**

- In unreal conditional sentences we can sometimes drop “if” and use an inversion. This is more often used in formal English. (非真实条件从句的连词if有时可省略,省略后用倒装结构。此结构常用于正式文体。)

**B. Grammar Exercises (语法练习)**

1. For each of the following sentences, first make a yes/no question and then make a wh-question based on the underlined parts, paying special attention to the word order of the sentences.

Example:

The trip from Beijing to Tianjin takes only 30 minutes by the super high-speed train.

→ Does the trip from Beijing to Tianjin take only 30 minutes by the super high-speed train?

Or: How long does the trip from Beijing to Tianjin take by the super high-speed train?

- (1) The Shanghai line took two and a half years to construct.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

Or: \_\_\_\_\_

- (2) Karen and I are planning to visit one of Karen's friends in Hohhot.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

Or: \_\_\_\_\_

- (3) Magnets are used to lift and propel the train at very high speeds.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

Or: \_\_\_\_\_

- (4) Tomorrow we will take the Shanghai Maglev Train to the airport.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

Or: \_\_\_\_\_

- (5) The trip from Beijing to Tianjin used to take 70-80 minutes by train.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

Or: \_\_\_\_\_

- (6) We can look up the train schedule at the business center in our hotel.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

Or: \_\_\_\_\_

- (7) The Shanghai Maglev Train we will be traveling on was built in Germany.

→ \_\_\_\_\_  
Or: \_\_\_\_\_

- (8) The fastest non-maglev train in China is the Beijing-Tianjin train.

→ \_\_\_\_\_  
Or: \_\_\_\_\_

- (9) The normal top speed of the Shanghai Maglev Train is 430 Kilometers per hour.

→ \_\_\_\_\_  
Or: \_\_\_\_\_

- (10) The Beijing-Tianjin train was the first super high-speed train designed and manufactured in China.

→ \_\_\_\_\_  
Or: \_\_\_\_\_

2. Rewrite the following sentences by using the inverted order.

Example:

The exhibition will not close until the end of the month.

→ Not until the end of the month will the exhibition close.

- (1) The bus is coming. Let's hurry.

→ Here \_\_\_\_\_

- (2) I have never heard such beautiful singing.

→ Never \_\_\_\_\_

- (3) There has scarcely been such a crowd in this small town.

→ Scarcely \_\_\_\_\_

- (4) Both smoking and drinking of alcohol is prohibited in this coach.

→ Smoking is prohibited in this coach. So \_\_\_\_\_

- (5) The price of the plane tickets goes up during Christmas season.

→ Up \_\_\_\_\_

- (6) I not only enjoy classical music, but I also have a season ticket to the symphony.

→ Not only \_\_\_\_\_, but I also have a season ticket to the symphony.

- (7) Neither daddy nor mom will agree to your idea of traveling to Tibet by yourself.

→ Daddy will not agree to your idea of traveling to Tibet by yourself. Nor \_\_\_\_\_

- (8) Joy was able to make herself heard by everybody in the group only by shouting.  
→ Only \_\_\_\_\_
- (9) Though our guide was eloquent, she was not able to persuade any of us to buy the gifts.  
→ Eloquent \_\_\_\_\_, she was not able to persuade any of us to buy the gifts.
- (10) We can enjoy ourselves better on a trip to a foreign place only when we take time to learn about the people and the culture we're visiting.  
→ Only \_\_\_\_\_, we can enjoy ourselves better on a trip to a foreign place.

3. Correct the errors in the following sentences. Two of the sentences contain no error.

- (1) Little I knew how warm it was in Hainan during January.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (2) Jane's family has never been on a holiday abroad.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (3) Not only did I see Paris, but did I also see the Alps and London while in Europe.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (4) There the last bell goes before the train leaves; we'd better hurry.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (5) Joy visited "The End of the Earth" when in Hainan.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (6) So quickly he ran that he caught the bus leaving—just in time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (7) Though hot it was, they continued on their hike up the mountain.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (8) Here is your ticket. Have a pleasant flight to Hawaii.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (9) If you won't go on the tour to Beijing this year, neither do I.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (10) Only after we explained the exciting travel plans and places to see, Jane agreed to come along.  
\_\_\_\_\_



(11) Had I been told of how lovely Hainan was, I would have gladly gone along on the travel tour.

(12) Seldom wanted we to go with our group, as we wanted to stay on the beach while we were in Sanya.

4. Complete the sentences with your own ideas, paying special attention to the word order.

- (1) Were I you, I would ...
- (2) Little did I know that ...
- (3) No sooner had I ...
- (4) At top of the hill stands ...
- (5) Under no circumstances will I ...
- (6) So dense was the fog that ...
- (7) Hardly had we finished eating when ...
- (8) Nowhere in the world will you find such ...
- (9) Not only is TV a convenient source of pleasure but also ...
- (10) Not until Effie left China did she realize ...

## Part VII Unit Review Exercises (单元综合练习)

### A. Vocabulary Exercises (词汇练习)

1. Use the idioms/expressions below to complete the short dialogues. Use each idiom/expression once. Then, practice the dialogues with a partner.

bump                      rather than                      in terms of  
every leg of                      keep ... fingers crossed

(1) A: Have you heard the announcement? Our flight is overbooked and the airline is asking for volunteers to fly later.

B: Yes, I heard it. I'm afraid that they will \_\_\_\_\_ passengers if they don't get enough volunteers.

(2) A: Did you have a good trip?

B: We had a great trip. Our travel agent carefully planned \_\_\_\_\_ the journey so we had no problem with flight transfers at different destinations.

(3) A: A few flights have been cancelled because of the storm tonight.

B: I \_\_\_\_\_ that our flight will depart on time; otherwise, I'll miss my connecting flight in LA.

(4) A: We have prepared two possible itineraries for your group's China trip so that you may compare and choose.

B: Which one has better connecting flights \_\_\_\_\_ time and convenience?

(5) A: My sister has invited me to visit her family in Seattle. I'll fly there if I can get a discount airplane ticket this weekend.

B: From LA to Seattle? You should go by train \_\_\_\_\_ plane. The coastal scenery on the way is fantastic!

2. Studying word families helps build vocabulary more effectively. For this exercise, write down the adjective and adverb forms of the following nouns.

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
inconvenience	_____	_____
flexibility	_____	_____
pleasure	_____	_____
creativity	_____	_____
potential	_____	_____

Now, use the correct form of the above words to complete the following sentences.

- (1) The unstable political situation may cause \_\_\_\_\_ problems to the economy of the country.
- (2) Flight cancellation tends to cause travelers a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.
- (3) The New Invention Exhibition demonstrated unprecedented \_\_\_\_\_ in the field of science and technology.
- (4) The revised schedule allows the employees more \_\_\_\_\_ in time management.
- (5) It was such a \_\_\_\_\_ trip that many participants would like to take it again the following year.

### B. Dictation (听写)

First, listen to the entire paragraph to understand the main idea. Then listen to each sentence carefully and write down exactly what you hear on a separate piece of paper. Finally, listen to the whole paragraph one more time to check your sentences.

### C. Sentence combination (句子组合)

1. Circle the correct word to combine the two clauses. Write the combined sentence on the line.

(1) because / so

Joy's guests are great travelers.

These travelers extend friendship wherever they go.

---

(2) after / so that

I need to rest well tonight.

I will be able to perform better at work tomorrow.

---

(3) what / that

Travelers need to know.

Immunization shots are important in disease prevention.

---

(4) what / if

Would they like to stay for another week or leave tomorrow?

We need to find out.

---

(5) who / which

"Read thousands of books and travel thousands of miles" is a maxim.

Ancient Chinese scholars followed the maxim in pursuit of knowledge.

---

2. Combine the following pairs of sentences using one of the given words. Use each word once.

when	who	which	if	so that
------	-----	-------	----	---------

(1) People travel. People hope to get to their destination on time.

(2) There are not enough volunteers. The airline will have to bump passengers off the oversold flight.

(3) People travel.

They can learn about other cultures.

(4) The airline will provide the travelers with food vouchers. Food vouchers can be used in any food shop in the airport.

(5) Those travelers volunteered to delay their flight. Those travelers will receive

cash compensation from the airline.

#### D. Translation (翻译)

##### 1. Translate the following sentences into Chinese.

- (1) Unfortunately, our journey was interrupted by a thunder storm.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (2) Our tour guide successfully negotiated with the airline on our behalf and helped us get reasonable compensation.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (3) Customer satisfaction is of paramount importance in the airline industry.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (4) I'm crossing my fingers that we will get to the destination on time.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (5) We appreciate your cooperation in resolving the overbooking problem today.  
\_\_\_\_\_

##### 2. Translate the following sentences into English.

- (1) 因为超卖,航空公司正在征询自愿延期飞行的旅客。  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (2) 主要航空公司一般都与其他航空公司有票务协议。  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (3) 这个航班的延期会造成我们赶不上下一段的航班。  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (4) 他们的座位由经济舱升到了商务舱。  
\_\_\_\_\_
- (5) 对于本次班机的取消给您带来的不便我们向您道歉。  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 21 世纪大学实用旅游英语(第二册)的总词汇表

abstinence /'æbstɪnəns/ <i>n.</i>	the act of not doing or having sth. that someone enjoys 节制(U1)
academic bias	unfair preference based on educational backgrounds or academic beliefs 学术偏见(U4)
accommodation /ə,kɒmə'deɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	usually used in plural: services supplied for convenience and/or need, such as lodging, food, flight, train, etc. 膳宿;方便设施(U8)
accompany /ə'kʌmpəni/ <i>v.</i>	go together with 陪同(U2)
accustomed /ə'kʌstəmd/ <i>adj.</i>	be comfortable with sth., be used to sth. 习惯于(U3)
acquired taste	something a person can only learn to like with time 养成的习惯、爱好(U2)
acre /'eɪkə/ <i>n.</i>	measure of land, about 4 050 square metres 英亩(等于约 4 050 平方米)(U1)
acrobatics /,ækrəʊ'bætɪks/ <i>n.</i>	skillful body movements that may involve jumping, spinning, flipping, and balancing 杂技(U2)
acrobat /'ækrəbæt/ <i>n.</i>	performer who does acrobatics 杂技演员(U2)
adjust /ə'dʒʌst/ <i>v.</i>	change sth. in a small way 调整(U1)
administrator /əd'mɪnɪstreɪtə/ <i>n.</i>	person responsible for managing affairs 管理人员; 行政人员(U8)
admiration /,ædmə'reɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	feeling of respect or approval 仰慕(U1)
adolescent /,ædəʊ'lesənt/ <i>n.</i>	teenager; someone who is becoming an adult 青少年(U2)
advocate /'ædvəkeɪt/ <i>v.</i>	recommend or support something 提倡;宣扬(U8)
affiliated /ə'fɪliətɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	closely connected to; associated with 附属的;相关的(U4)
affordable /ə'fɔ:dəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	not too expensive for sb.; able to buy or pay for sth. 付得起的;花费得起的(U4)
age discrimination	prohibiting someone from participating in certain

agent /'eɪdʒənt/ <i>n.</i>	activities because of the belief that the person's age is not appropriate to the activity 年龄歧视(U3)
age range	person who acts for, or manages the affairs of other people 代理人; 经纪人(U5)
agility /ə'dʒɪləti/ <i>n.</i>	an age group defined by a bottom and an upper limit of age 年龄段(组)(U3)
agricultural	the ability of moving quickly and easily 轻快; 敏捷(U3)
/,ægrɪ'kʌltʃərəl/ <i>adj.</i>	related to farming 农业(U5)
all-inclusiveness	including everything 全面包括的(U4)
/ˈɔ:lɪn'kluːsɪvnɪs/ <i>n.</i>	
all too often	very often 经常; 通常(U6)
alluring /ə'ljʊərɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	very attractive 诱惑的; 迷人的(U3)
alternative /ɔ:l'tɜ:nətɪv/ <i>n.</i>	different choice 替代的; 两中择一的(U1)
altitude sickness	illness caused by being at a high elevation with thinner air 高空病(U7)
ambitious /æm'bɪʃəs/ <i>adj.</i>	determined to be successful; having big plans for oneself 雄心勃勃的; 有抱负的; 热情的(U2)
amiable /'eɪmjəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	friendly, pleasant 和蔼可亲的; 和善的(U1)
angel /'eɪndʒəl/ <i>n.</i>	a spiritual being who lives with God in heaven; angels are often pictured as humans in white robes with wings 天使(U5)
anniversary /,ænɪ'vɜ:səri/ <i>n.</i>	regular celebration of an important event on the same day 周年纪念日(U5)
annual /'ænjʊəl/ <i>adj.</i>	covering the period of a year; happening every year 每年的; 年度的(U2)
anticipate /æn'tɪsɪpeɪt/ <i>v.</i>	expect; predict 期待的; 预期的(U6)
antique /æn'tiːk/ <i>adj.</i>	belonging to the distant past 古时的; 古老的(U4)
antiquities /æn'tɪkwɪtiz/ <i>n.</i>	object or place that dates from ancient times 古物; 古迹(U4)
anxious /'æŋkʃəs/ <i>adj.</i>	feeling nervous; worried or afraid 急切的; 焦急的; 担心挂念的(U4)
approximately	nearly correct or exact 近似地; 大约(U4)
/ə'prɒksɪmətli/ <i>adv.</i>	

archery /'ɑ:tʃəri/ <i>n.</i>	a sport in which people shoot arrows at a target using a bow 射箭术(U5)
arctic /'ɑ:ktɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	of the regions around the North Pole 北极的; 北极区的(U6)
armed with	be supplied with things that are useful 装备的; 配备着的(U1)
artifact /'ɑ:tɪfækt/ <i>n.</i>	object made by humans 人工制品(U4)
at first glance	the first time you notice or consider something 初看; 乍一看(U5)
audition /ɔ:'dɪʃən/ <i>n. / v.</i>	test performance of a candidate 面试(U4)
autonomous recruitment	自主招生(U4)
average /'ævərɪdʒ/ <i>adj.</i>	being about midway between extremes 平均的(U2)
avid /'ævɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	enthusiastic, extremely interested 渴望的(U3)
award /ə'wɔ:d/ <i>n.</i>	a prize honor, etc. given to someone for outstanding performance 奖品; 奖状(U1)
awe /ɔ:/ <i>n.</i>	feeling of respect combined with fear or wonder 敬畏(U7)
banish /'bænɪʃ/ <i>v.</i>	force a person to leave and never return to a particular area 流放(U5)
banner /'bænə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	long piece of cloth, often with words on it, that hangs from a pole or between two poles 旗帜; 横幅(U2)
barbecue /'bɑ:bɪkju:/ <i>n.</i>	outdoor party at which food is cooked over a metal frame or over an open fire and eaten 烧烤野餐(U5)
basin /'beɪsən/ <i>n.</i>	area of land drained by a river 洼地; 盆地(U2)
be into	have great interest in sth. such as an activity or hobby 热衷于(U6)
beloved /bɪ'lʌvɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	well-loved 热爱的(U5)
be worth (sth. )	have value 值得(U7)
big(ger) deal	a (more) significant event 重大事情(U5)
boast of	talk proudly about 自夸; 炫耀(U4)
booking fee	reservation fee 订票费(U7)
boost /bu:st/ <i>v. / n.</i>	improve in a positive direction, increase the strength or value of sth. 促进(U3)
bound /baʊnd/ <i>v.</i>	form the boundary of (something); limit 形成(某

	事物)的界线;限制(U3)
bourgeois /'buəʒwaɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	of or related to the middle class and interest in possessions and social class 资产阶级的;中产阶级的(U3)
brave /breɪv/ <i>v.</i>	endure or face without showing fear 冒着;勇敢面对(U6)
break the rule	to do something that doesn't follow the usual regulations 破规矩;犯规(U1)
breeding /'briːdɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	the activity of keeping animals in order to produce particular qualities 繁殖;饲养(U1)
breeze /briːz/ <i>n.</i>	light wind 微风(U5)
bring out the best	cause positive reactions and outcomes when interacting with others 显现最佳效果(U1)
bronze /brɒnz/ <i>n.</i>	alloy of copper and tin 青铜(U4)
brook /brʊk/ <i>n.</i>	small stream 小溪(U7)
Buddhist /'bʊdɪst/ <i>n.</i>	a person whose religion is Buddhism 佛教徒(U3)
buddy /'bʌdɪ/ <i>n.</i>	a companion, partner, or pal 伙伴(U6)
bunk bed	beds that are one above the other and attached to a wall or frame 上下两层贴墙的床铺(U7)
by the way	expression used to change the topic of a conversation 顺便提及(U7)
cabin /'kæbɪn/ <i>n.</i>	small room on a ship or plane 船舱;机舱(U7)
calcified /'kælsɪfaɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	hardened from the deposit of calcium salts 钙化的(U7)
camaraderie /kəmə'rɑːdəriː/ <i>n.</i>	friendliness; trust among a group of people who spend time together 友谊;情谊(U1)
cancellation /kænsəl'eɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	termination; deletion 取消(U8)
canister /'kænɪstə/ <i>n.</i>	metal container that holds a gas 罐,筒(U7)
captivity /kæp'tɪvɪtɪ/ <i>n.</i>	when an animal is kept in a cage etc. and not allowed to go where they want 囚禁;束缚(U1)
cargo /'kɑːgəʊ/ <i>n.</i>	goods carried on a ship or plane 货物(U6)
carol /'kærəl/ <i>n.</i>	a traditional song sung at Christmas 圣诞颂歌(U5)
carve /kɑːv/ <i>v.</i>	shape by cutting away material from wood or stone 雕刻(U6)



caution /'kɔːʃən/ <i>v.</i>	warn (somebody) to be careful 提醒或警告要小心 (U6)
cave /keɪv/ <i>n.</i>	hollow place in the side of a cliff or underground 洞穴 (U7)
centigrade /'sentɪɡreɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	of or using a temperature scale with the freezing-point of water at 0 degree and the boiling-point at 100 degree 摄氏温度计的 (U2)
century /'sentʃʊri/ <i>n.</i>	世纪 (U2)
ceremony /'serɪməni/ <i>n.</i>	formal act performed on a religious or public occasion 典礼; 仪式 (U8)
champion /'tʃæmpiən/ <i>n.</i>	a winner of first prize in competition 冠军 (U7)
chant /tʃɑːnt/ <i>v.</i>	recite repeatedly in a rhythmic way 吟诵 (U3)
chapel /'tʃæpəl/ <i>n.</i>	small building or room used for Christian worship 小教堂 (U8)
chase /tʃeɪs/ <i>v.</i>	run after in order to capture somebody or something 追逐; 追赶 (U5)
chatter /'tʃætə/ <i>v.</i>	non-stop talking; make a rapid series of short high-pitched sounds 聊天; 闲聊 (U4)
chimney /'tʃɪmni/ <i>n.</i>	brick opening that connects to the top of a fireplace and allows smoke to escape 烟囱 (U5)
Christmas ornaments	decorations that are hung on a Christmas tree 圣诞装饰 (U5)
Christmas tree	evergreen tree that is covered with lights, colored balls and other decorations 圣诞树 (U5)
circus /'sɜːkəs/ <i>n.</i>	a group of people and animals that travel around to perform acrobatics and other skillful forms of entertainment 马戏团 (U2)
clever /'klevə/ <i>adj.</i>	quick at learning and understanding things 机灵的; 聪明的 (U6)
clown /klaʊn/ <i>n.</i>	entertainer who usually has a humorously painted face 马戏团小丑 (U2)
code /kəʊd/ <i>n.</i>	set of laws or rules arranged in a system 法典; 法律 (U3)
cohesive /kəʊ'hiːsɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	the state of togetherness, sticking together in a group 有凝聚性的 (U1)

comical /'kɒmɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	funny 喜剧性的;滑稽的(U6)
commercial /kə'mɜːʃəl/ <i>adj.</i>	for business purposes 商业的(U7)
comparable /'kɒmpərəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	similar; as good as; equal 可比较的(U8)
compartment /kəm'pɑːtmənt/ <i>n.</i>	small enclosed space 斗室;舱;车厢(U7)
compete /kəm'piːt/ <i>v.</i>	try to win something in a contest 竞争(U3)
competition /ˌkɒmpɪ'tɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	a contest in which a winner can be determined 比赛; 竞争(U3)
competitive /kəm'petətɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	able to be more successful than others people; determined to win 竞争的;比赛的(U4)
compose /kəm'pəʊz/ <i>v.</i>	write (music, etc.) 创作(乐曲等)(U3)
comprehensive /ˌkɒmprɪ'hensɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	including many things and covering multiplesubjects; complete 全面的(U4)
comprehensive /ˌkɒmprɪ'hensɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	that includes (nearly)everything 全面的
concentration /ˌkɒnsən'treɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	grouping of people or things 聚集;集中(U7)
consecutive /kən'sekjətɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	coming one after the other without interruption; following continuously 按顺序来的;连续不断的 (U4)
consume /kən'sjuːm/ <i>v.</i>	use up 用尽;消耗(U1)
contortionist /kən'tɔːʃənɪst/ <i>n.</i>	performer who bends her body in extreme and unusual ways 柔术(U2)
contour /'kɒntʊə/ <i>n.</i>	the shape of the outer edges of something 轮廓;外 形(U7)
conventional /kən'venʃənəl/ <i>adj.</i>	typical; regular; used for a long time 传统的(U7)
conversely /kən'vɜːslɪ/ <i>adv.</i>	in contrast, on the other hand 反过来说;相反地 (U6)
coordinate /kəʊ'ɔːdɪnət/ <i>v.</i>	organize the efforts of many people 协调(U5)
coral reef	a line of hard rocks formed by coral, found in warm sea water that is not very deep 珊瑚礁(U5)
cormorant /'kɔːməərənt/ <i>n.</i>	a bird similar to, but smaller than a pelican, used in China for catching fish 鸬鹚,鸬鹚(U6)

cornerstone /'kɔːnəstəʊn/ <i>n.</i>	foundation; basis 基石 (U4)
corruption /kə'rʌpʃən/ <i>n.</i>	dishonesty at an official level 腐化 (U5)
couplet /'kʌplɪt/ <i>n.</i>	two-lined poem 对联; 对偶体诗 (U5)
courageous /kə'reɪdʒəs/ <i>adj.</i>	brave 勇敢的 (U2)
court /kɔːt/ <i>v.</i>	engage in activities to attract a partner to establish a romantic relationship 追求 (U3)
craftsman /'krɑːftsmən/ <i>n.</i>	skilled workman, especially one who makes things by hand 能工巧匠 (U8)
cranberry sauce	popular dish made from berries that is often served at Thanksgiving 酸果酱 (U5)
crane /kreɪn/ <i>n.</i>	large bird with long legs, neck and beak 鹤; 鹭 (U1)
creative /kriː'eɪtɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	able to create 有创造力的 (U6)
creativity /ˌkriː'eɪ'tɪvəti/ <i>n.</i>	the ability to think of new ways of doing things; originality; resourcefulness 创造力 (U8)
critical /'krɪtɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	see things in a negative way 批评的 (U1)
crop /krɒp/ <i>n.</i>	plant grown by farmers for food 庄稼 (U5)
croquet /'krəʊkeɪ/ <i>n.</i>	a game played by hitting wooden balls through metal wickets with wooden clubs. 槌球 (U3)
crust /krʌst/ <i>n.</i>	hard outside part of a baked pastry 面包皮 (U5)
crystal-clear /'krɪstəl'kliə/ <i>adj.</i>	completely clear and transparent like glass 透明似水晶的 (U5)
cub /kʌb/ <i>n.</i>	young fox, bear, lion, tiger, etc. (狐、熊、狮、虎等的) 幼兽 (U1)
culture shock	a state of discomfort from being in an unfamiliar or foreign place surrounded by unfamiliar people and customs 文化震撼 (U1)
cymbal /'sɪmbəl/ <i>n.</i>	two round metal pieces that are hit together to make a sound 铙钹, 镲 (U2)
dam /dæm/ <i>n.</i>	barrier built across a river to hold back the water and form a reservoir 水坝; 水堤 (U2)
debut /'deɪbjʊː/ <i>v. /n.</i>	the first time sth. is seen 首演; 初次 (U3)
decadent /'dekədənt/ <i>adj.</i>	low morals, more concerned with pleasure than serious matters 颓废的 (U3)
deck out	decorate 装饰 (U3)

declare /dɪ'kleə/ v.	formally announce; make known clearly 正式宣布; 表明 (U5)
decorate /'dekəreɪt/ v.	make more beautiful by adding ornaments to it 装饰 (U6)
deduct /dɪ'dʌkt/ v.	subtract 扣除 (U5)
defensively /dɪ'fensɪvli/ adv.	watching out for others with suspicion that they might do something wrong 防卫 (U6)
deforest /di:'fɔ:ɪst/ v.	remove forests from (a place) 采伐森林; 消除树木 (U1)
degrading /dɪ'greɪdɪŋ/ adj.	shameful, undignified 堕落的; 低级的 (U6)
delicately /'delɪkətli/ adv.	subtly; gently 精巧的, 精致的 (U4)
deposit /dɪ'pɒzɪt/ v.	cause (mud, clay, etc.) to settle 使(淤泥等)沉积 (U3)
descend /dɪ'send/ v.	come down 下降; 下来 (U5)
despair /dɪ'speə(r)/ n.	extreme depression; loss of hope 绝望 (U5)
destroy /dɪ'strɔɪ/ n.	damage so badly that it no longer exists or works 摧毁; 毁坏 (U8)
devote oneself to	give (one's time, energy, etc.) to 致力于 (U6)
diameter /daɪ'æmɪtə/ n.	straight line connecting the centre of a circle to two points on its sides 直径 (U7)
diesel engine	engine that burns a heavy oil instead of gasoline 柴油机 (U7)
digital camera	a camera that produces digital images 数码相机 (U6)
digital display screen	a screen on which electronic data appear 电子数据屏幕 (U7)
dignified /'dɪɡnɪfaɪd/ adj.	very serious and important 有威严的, 有品格的 (U2)
disapprove of	refuse to agree to; dislike 不赞成; 不喜欢 (U5)
disorder /dɪs'ɔ:də/ n.	mental or physical problems 精神或身体的疾病 (U4)
display /dɪs'pleɪ/ v.	put something on show 展示; 陈列 (U6)
distinct /dɪ'stɪŋkt/ adj.	easily seen, felt or understood 清楚的; 明显的 (U2)
distinguished /dɪ'stɪŋɡwɪʃt/ adj.	recognized for excellence; well known 卓越的 (U4)

distribute /dɪ'strɪbjʊt/ v.	give out to each person in a group 分布,散发(U5)
divide /dɪ'vaɪd/ v.	split or break into parts 分开;分隔(U8)
divine /dɪ'vaɪn/ adj.	of, from or like God 上帝或神的(U8)
diving /'daɪvɪŋ/ n.	a sport of swimming under water using special equipment to help people breathe 潜水;跳水(U5)
document /'dɒkjʊmənt/ n.	paper, form, book, etc. giving information, evidence or proof of something 文件;公文;文献(U8)
domestic /dəʊ'mestɪk/ adj.	of or inside a particular country 本国的;国内的(U5)
drape /dreɪp/ v.	cover or decorate 遮盖或装饰(U7)
dressed up	wearing nice clothes 打扮起来的(U5)
drown /draʊn/ v.	die or be covered with water 使淹死;淹没(U2)
dynasty /'dɪnəstɪ/ n.	series of rulers all belonging to the same family 朝代;王朝(U3)
earplug /'ɪəplʌɡ/ n.	rubber or plastic pieces that are placed in the ears to mute sound 耳塞(U2)
ecological /ˌekə'lɒdʒɪkəl/ adj.	connected with the way plants, animals, and people are related to each other and to their environment 生态的;生态学的(U2)
edge /edʒ/ n.	outside limit or boundary of a solid object, surface or area 边缘;外围;界线(U5)
erie /'ɪəri/ adj.	causing a feeling of mystery and fear 怪异的(U7)
efficient /ɪ'fɪʃənt/ adj.	working well without wasting time, resources, or effort 有效率的(U3)
elaborate /ɪ'læbəreɪt/ adj.	complex; highly detailed 详细的;精细(巧)的(U2)
elevate /'elɪveɪt/ v.	raise something up 提升;提高(U4)
elevation /ˌelɪ'veɪʃən/ n.	how high a location is compared to sea level 海拔高度(U7)
embroidered /ɪm'brɔɪdəd/ adj.	decorated with ornamental needlework 刺绣的(U3)
emperor /'empərə/ n.	ruler of an empire 皇帝(U4)
enchantment /ɪn'tʃɑ:ntmənt/ n.	the quality or state of being very pleasant or attractive 着魔;喜悦(U5)

enclose /ɪnˈkleʊz/ v.	put a wall, fence, etc. round (something) 用墙、篱笆等围住(U3)
encounter /ɪnˈkaʊntə/ v.	meet somebody unexpectedly 偶遇;邂逅(U4)
endangered /ɪnˈdeɪndʒəd/ adj.	(the population) being so small that it may die out 有危险的;濒于灭绝的(U1)
engage /ɪnˈgeɪdʒ/ in v.	participate in 参与,参加;从事(U2)
enhance /ɪnˈhɑːns/ v.	add to in a positive way, increase or improve 加强; 改进(U1)
enhance /ɪnˈhɑːns/ v.	increase (the good qualities); make (somebody/ something) look better 提高;美化(U3)
enormity /ɪˈnɔːməti/ n.	immense size 巨大;极大(U7)
ensemble /ɒŋˈsɒŋblə/ n.	a smaller group of performers 小型乐团;剧团(U4)
enthrall /ɪnˈθrɔːl/ v.	make someone very interested and excited 迷惑;迷 住(U3)
entitle /ɪnˈtaɪtl/ v.	grant sb. the right to have or to do sth. 使有资格; 给予权力(称号)(U8)
entrance /ˈentrəns/ n.	opening, gate, passage, etc. by which one enters 入口;通道(U7)
ethnic minority	culturally related group of people that is not of the dominant group in an area 少数民族(U1)
evacuate /ɪˈvækjuet/ v.	leave or withdraw from (a place) especially because of danger 撤离;疏散(U2)
evolve /ɪˈvɒlv/ v.	grow from sth.; develop and change 发展;展开 (U3)
exception /ɪkˈsepʃən/ n.	something that doesn't follow the usual rule 例外 (U1)
exhibition /ˌeksɪˈbɪʃən/ n.	a public display or demonstration that people can see 展览(U5)
exhibit /ɪɡˈzɪbɪt/ n.	object or collection of objects displayed for the public 展览品;陈列品(U6)
exploration /ˌekspləˈreɪʃən/ n.	a journey of discovery or search 探险(U7)
explore /ɪksˈplɔː/ v.	travel into or through (a place) in order to learn about it 探险;考察(U5)
exposition /ˌeksپəˈzɪʃən/ n.	exhibition of goods 展览会;博览会(U6)

exquisite /'ekskwɪzɪt/ <i>adj.</i>	delicate; intricate 精致(巧)的, 优雅的(U4)
extinction /'ɪks'tɪŋkʃən/ <i>n.</i>	not in existence, especially a kind of plant or animal 灭绝; 绝种(U1)
fabulous /'fæbjʊləs/ <i>adj.</i>	amazing; excellent 极好的; 无比的; 难以置信的 (U4)
facilitate /fə'sɪlɪteɪt/ <i>v.</i>	make sth., such as a discussion or group activity, happen more easily 促进; 协助(U1)
facility /fə'sɪlətɪ/ <i>n.</i>	plural form: facilities; something designed to provide a service or fulfill a need 设施(U8)
faintly /'feɪntli/ <i>adv.</i>	difficult to see, hear or smell 微弱地; 模糊地(U7)
fairyland /'feərɪlənd/ <i>n.</i>	a place of delicate beauty or magical charm 仙境 (U7)
fairy tale	a story (as for children) involving fantastic forces and beings 神仙故事, 童话(U6)
famed /feɪmd/ <i>adj.</i>	known widely and well 著名的(U2)
fascinating /'fæsmɪnɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	extremely interesting or charming 迷人的; 有极大吸 引力的; 引人入胜的(U3)
feat /fi:t/ <i>n.</i>	impressive accomplishment requiring skill or strength 绝技(U2)
fed up with	very tired of; unable to bear anymore 受够了; 受不 了(U5)
female /'fi:meɪl/ <i>adj.</i>	of the sex that can give birth to children or produce eggs 雌性的; 女的; 母的(U1)
ferocious /fə'reʊʃəs/ <i>adj.</i>	fierce 非常强烈的; 猛烈的(U2)
festival /'festəvəl/	day or time of religious or other celebration 节日; 喜 庆日(U5)
firecracker /'faɪəkrækə/ <i>n.</i>	small explosive that makes a loud noise 鞭炮(U5)
fireworks /'faɪəwɜ:kəs/ <i>n.</i>	used in plural form; colorful explosives that are lit for holidays 焰火(U5)
fish out of water	be uncomfortable with new surroundings that are very unfamiliar 水土不服; 不适应环境(U1)
flexibility /'fleksə'bɪlətɪ/ <i>n.</i>	ability to bend and stretch one's body easily 灵活性 (U2)
fluctuation /ˌflʌktʃʊ'eɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	change 波动; 变动(U6)

foliage /'fəʊliɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i>	(all the) leaves of a tree or plant 植物的叶子 (U3)
forklift /'fɔːklɪft/ <i>n.</i>	a small vehicle with two movable parts on the front used to lift heavy loads 铲车 (U6)
formalized /'fɔːməlaɪzd/ <i>adj.</i>	rule governed, official 正式的; 成章的; 定型的 (U3)
fortress /'fɔːtrɪs/ <i>n.</i>	a large strong building used for defending an important place 要塞; 堡垒 (U8)
founder /'faʊndə/ <i>n.</i>	person who founds or establishes something 建立者; 缔造者 (U4)
founding /'faʊndɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	the formal beginning of a business or an organization 成立; 建立 (U5)
fragrance /'freɪŋrəns/ <i>n.</i>	pleasant or sweet smell 芳香; 香味 (U4)
franchise /'fræntʃaɪz/ <i>n.</i>	a business that is licensed to sell the goods or services of a parent company 连锁店; 加盟店 (U6)
free of charge	at no cost to the person receiving an item or service 免费的 (U5)
from a ... standpoint	from the point of view of 从……立场看问题 (U7)
frustrating /'frʌstreɪtɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	exasperating; sth. difficult to do and it tends to cause a person to lose patience 困惑的 (U8)
fundamental /'fʌndə'mentəl/ <i>adj.</i>	basic 基本的; 根本的 (U5)
gaze /geɪz/ <i>v.</i>	look at in an admiring way 凝视; 注视 (U5)
generation /ˌdʒenə'reɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	single stage in a family history 一代 (U5)
geologist /dʒɪ'ɒlədʒɪst/ <i>n.</i>	someone who studies the rocks, soil etc. that make up the Earth 地质学家 (U7)
get hooked on	become addicted to 上瘾 (U2)
gleaming /'gliːmɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	shining 闪闪发光 (U8)
global /'gləʊbəl/ <i>adj.</i>	covering or affecting the whole world; world-wide 全球性的; 全世界的 (U1)
globalized /'gləʊbəlaɪzd/ <i>adj.</i>	becoming international 全球化的; 国际的 (U8)
goal /ɡəʊl/ <i>n.</i>	object of one's efforts; target 目标; 目的 (U1)
going rate	the current cost to rent or use something for a certain time 现价; 市价 (U6)
gold-plated	a method of depositing a thin layer of gold onto the



<i>/ˈɡəʊldpleɪtɪd/ a.</i>	<i>surface of another metal</i> 镀金的;包金的 (U8)
<i>gong /ɡɒŋ/ n.</i>	hanging round metal piece that is hit with a stick to make a sound 锣 (U2)
good shape	having a healthy and athletic appearance 健康的身材 (U6)
<i>goofy /ˈɡuːfɪ/ adj.</i>	silly; awkward 愚蠢的;笨拙的 (U2)
go with	choose; select 选择 (U7)
<i>graceful /ˈɡreɪsful/ adj.</i>	showing a pleasing beauty of form, movement or manner 优雅的;优美的 (U2)
<i>greenery /ˈɡriːnəri/ n.</i>	attractive green leaves and plants 绿叶;绿枝 (U2)
“green” <i>/ɡriːn/ adj.</i>	environmentally friendly, does not harm the environment “绿色” (U6)
<i>grotesque /ɡrəʊˈtesk/ adj.</i>	strangely distorted 奇形怪状的 (U7)
<i>ground /ɡraʊnd/ n.</i>	always used in plural form; an physical area of land for a specific sport or activity; the land or garden area around a building 操场 (U3)
<i>habitat /ˈhæbɪtæt/ n.</i>	natural environment of an animal or a plant (动物或植物的) 自然环境;栖息地 (U1)
hacky sack	a game in which a small bag filled with sand or small rocks is juggled with the feet 沙袋球 (U3)
<i>harness /ˈhɑːnɪs/ n.</i>	leather straps used to control a horse 马具 (U2)
<i>harvest /ˈhɑːvɪst/ v. /n.</i>	gather crops; crops that have been gathered 收获 (U5)
<i>hectare /ˈhektɑː/ n.</i>	measure of area equal to 10 000 square meters 公顷 (合 10 000 平方米) (U7)
<i>heritage /ˈherɪtɪdʒ/ n.</i>	cultural achievements that have been passed on from earlier generations 文化遗产 (U8)
<i>high-pitched /ˈhaɪˈpɪtʃt/ adj.</i>	used to describe a sound with a high frequency 高调;音调高的 (U2)
<i>high-tech /ˈhaɪtek/ adj.</i>	involving advanced technology 高科技 (U7)
<i>holy /ˈhəʊli/ adj.</i>	associated with God or with religion; morally and spiritually pure 神圣的;圣洁的 (U3)
<i>hook /hʊk/ v./n.</i>	use a curved object to catch and pull something 钩子 (U3)
<i>hoop /huːp/ n.</i>	large ring 铁环 (U2)

horizontal /ˌhɒrɪˈzɒntəl/ <i>adj.</i>	in a line from left to right, opposite of vertical 水平的;地平线的(U3)
hot topic	a subject that is popular for people to discuss and is often controversial 热门话题(U1)
hydroelectric power station	station that uses water-power to produce electricity 水力发电厂(U2)
idyllic /aɪˈdɪlɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	pleasing or picturesque in natural simplicity 田园诗的(U2)
imaginative /ɪˈmædʒɪnətɪv/ <i>a.</i>	containing new and interesting ideas 富有想象力的;爱想象的(U6)
I'm all ears.	I'm listening. 洗耳恭听(U2)
immutable /ɪˈmjuːtəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	unchangeable 不变的(U4)
imperial /ɪmˈpiəriəl/ <i>adj.</i>	of an empire 帝国的;帝王的(U3)
impressive /ɪmˈpresɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	remarkable, giving a positive feeling 给人深刻印象的,令人难忘(感动)的(U3)
imprinted /ɪmˈprɪntɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	pressed or printed onto something 有印记的(U5)
improvise /ɪmˈprəvaɪz/ <i>v.</i>	act without following a planned script 即兴发挥;即席(现场)创作(U2)
in addition	also; as well; besides 另外;加之(U5)
incentive /ɪnˈsentɪv/ <i>n.</i>	something that motivates someone to do sth. 鼓励;刺激(U1)
income tax	money paid to the government that is a percentage of a person's yearly earnings 所得税(U5)
Indian /ˈɪndiən/ <i>n.</i>	original people groups native to North, South, and Central Americas 印第安人(U5)
inferior /ɪnˈfɪəriə/ <i>adj.</i>	of lower quality 低等的(U5)
in general	as a rule; usually 通常;照例(U8)
inlet /ˈɪnlet/ <i>n.</i>	strip of water extending into the land from the sea or a lake 湾;水湾(U3)
in pursuit of	chasing after sth.; to striving for sth. 追寻;追求(U8)
insecure /ˌɪnsɪˈkjʊə(r)/ <i>adj.</i>	a feeling of not being safe or supported 不安的;无安全感的(U1)
inspire /ɪnˈspaɪə(r)/ <i>v.</i>	give somebody new ideas or feelings 赋予某人灵感(U3)

inspiring /ɪnˈspaɪərɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	sth. that makes sb. feel interested and enthusiastic 鼓励;激励 (U3)
insure /ɪnˈʃʊə/ <i>v.</i>	buy insurance for protection 保险;投保 (U7)
intellectualism /ɪntəˈlektʃʊəlɪzəm/ <i>n.</i>	devotion to the pursuits of knowledge 理智主义;唯 理智论;追求知识;理性 (U4)
interchangeably /ɪntəˈtʃeɪndʒəbli/ <i>adv.</i>	the ability to switch things that can be used in the same way 可互换的 (U6)
interest /ˈɪntrɪst/ <i>n.</i>	additional percentage of money which is added to the loan amount and paid back in payments 利息 (U5)
interrupt /ɪntəˈrʌpt/ <i>v.</i>	stop someone in the middle of an action 打断;干扰 (U8)
intimidating /ɪnˈtɪmɪdeɪtɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i>	causing others to feel nervous or less confident 威胁 的;恐吓的 (U2)
investment /ɪnˈvestmənt/ <i>n.</i>	to put money into something to make a profit or get an advantage 投资 (U5)
ironically /aɪˈrɒnɪkəli/ <i>adv.</i>	used to describe a situation which is the opposite of what one would expect 讽刺的 (U2)
It is small wonder that ...	It is not surprising that ...; It is expected that ... 不 足为奇;难怪 (U3)
jade /dʒeɪd/ <i>n.</i>	hard, usually green, stone from which ornaments are carved 玉;翡翠 (U4)
Jesus Christ	the person whom Christians believe is God's Son born as a human being 耶稣基督 (U5)
junk /dʒʌŋk/ <i>n.</i>	a kind of Chinese ship used since ancient times, having two to four sails and used to carry cargo 平底 帆船 (U6)
jut out	extend out or project in space 伸出 (U3)
keep abreast of <i>idiom.</i>	meet or come up to a required standard; keep up with current ideas or requirements 跟上要求;达到 (U4)
keep their fingers crossed <i>idiom.</i>	wish for luck for someone or sth.; hope for a good outcome for sb. or sth. 祈祷成功;祝愿 (U8)
killing me	an expression used to show that sth. is hurting the speaker a lot (俚语)“真要命” (U3)
kilometer /ˈkɪləˌmi:tə/ <i>n.</i>	a unit for measuring distance, equal to 1,000 meters

knowledgeable /'nɒlɪdʒəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	千米;公里(U2)
lantern /'læntən/ <i>n.</i>	having an understanding, to know something 有知识的;懂行的(U1)
layer /'leɪə/ <i>n.</i>	light for use outdoors in a transparent case 灯笼;提灯(U3)
legend /'ledʒənd/ <i>n.</i>	thickness of material laid over a surface 层(U7)
lightheaded /'laɪt'hedɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	story handed down from the past 传奇;传说(U3)
lightning bolt	dizzy feeling from lack of oxygen 头晕;头昏眼花(U7)
lime /laɪm/	flash of brilliant light in the sky produced by natural electricity 闪电;霹雳(U5)
lion tamer	white substance obtained by heating limestone 石灰(U7)
liquefied gas	person who trains and performs with lions 训狮人(U2)
litter /'lɪtə/ <i>n.</i>	a mixture of hydrocarbon gases used as a fuel in heating appliances 液化气(U2)
living quarters	all the young born to an animal at one time (一胎所生的)小动物;一窝(U1)
located /ləʊ'keɪtɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	housing available for people to live in 住处(U8)
lunar month	situated in a particular spot or place 位于……的(U2)
luxuriant /lʌg'zjʊəriənt/ <i>adj.</i>	a period of 28 or 29 days between one new moon and the next 阴历农历月(U8)
magic /'mædʒɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	growing thickly and strongly 繁密的;茂盛的(U3)
magical /'mædʒɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	wonderful; excellent 绝妙的;极好的(U7)
magnetic levitation	very enjoyable, exciting or romantic, in a strange or special way 有魔力;神奇的(U3)
magnet /'mæɡnɪt/ <i>n.</i>	a technology that uses magnetic forces to lift and move sth. 磁浮(U7)
magnificent	piece of iron or steel that can attract other metals 磁铁(U7)
/mæg'nɪfɪsənt/ <i>adj.</i>	splendid; remarkable; impressive 壮丽的;宏伟的;壮观的(U5)
make one's way	get from one place to another with some difficulty

make the cut <i>idiom.</i>	through obstacles 推进;逆行(U6) successfully pass (the test) 成功出线;顺利通过(考试)标准(U4)
make-up /'meɪkʌp/ <i>n.</i>	anything put on the face—such as powder, lipstick, or paint—to change one's appearance 面具,脸谱;化妆(U2)
make way for	为……让道;为……让路(U2)
mandatory /'mændətərɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	no choice, obligatory 命令的;强制的(U3)
manufactured /ˌmænjuˈfæktʃəd/ <i>adj.</i>	built or made in a factory 制造的;工厂生产的(U7)
marked field	painted or chalked lines in an area outside so that people can play a sport 室外运动场地(U3)
masterpiece /'mɑːstəpiːs/ <i>n.</i>	a high quality work of art, writing or music 杰作;名著(U8)
maxim /'mæksɪm/ <i>n.</i>	a well-known phrase or saying that has some proven truth to it 座右铭(U8)
measure /'meʒə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	a way to evaluation 衡量;测量(U4)
mechanical /mɪ'kænikəl/ <i>adj.</i>	of, connected with, produced by a machine 机械的;机械制造的(U6)
meditation /ˌmedɪ'teɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	think deeply in silence 沉思;冥想(U3)
merge /mɜːdʒ/ <i>v.</i>	join together; combine 合并(U2)
metropolis /mɪ'trɒpəlɪs/ <i>n.</i>	chief city of a region or country 大城市(U4)
migrate /maɪ'ɡreɪt/ <i>v.</i>	move from one area to another 移居;迁移(U6)
mime /maɪm/ <i>n.</i>	actor who performs without speaking 哑剧演员;丑角(U2)
mineral water	water that comes out of the ground naturally and is considered healthy to drink 矿泉水(U2)
misconception /ˌmɪskən'sepʃən/ <i>n.</i>	an idea that is incorrect 错误观念(U6)
misery /'mɪzəri/ <i>n.</i>	the condition of extreme sadness, unhappiness 凄惨(U6)
misty /'mɪstɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	marked by mist; not clear or bright as a result of mist 有薄雾的;朦胧的(U3)
mode of transportation	a way to move from one place to another 交通方式(U6)

moist /mɔɪst/ <i>adj.</i>	slightly wet 潮湿的;湿润的(U2)
monk /mʌŋk/ <i>n.</i>	member of an all-male religious group who lives in a monastery 修士;僧侣(U8)
monument /'mɒnjʊmənt/ <i>n.</i>	building, column, statue, etc. built to remind people of a famous person or event 纪念馆;纪念碑(U3)
mortgage /'mɔ:ɡɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i>	money borrowed to purchase a home 房屋抵押贷款(U5)
multi-tasking /ˈmʌltɪ,tɑ:skɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	doing more than one activity at a time 同时进行多项任务(U7)
mural /'mjʊərəl/ <i>n.</i>	wall paintings 壁画(U4)
murder /'mɜ:də/ <i>v.</i>	kill unlawfully and intentionally 谋杀(U3)
museology /ˌmju:zɪ'ɒlədʒɪ/ <i>n.</i>	science of museums 博物馆学(U4)
mysterious /mɪs'tɪəriəs/ <i>adj.</i>	full of mystery; hard to understand or explain 神秘的;不可思议的(U7)
native /'neɪtɪv/ <i>adj./n.</i>	originally from specific place; person born in that place 当地的(人)(U5)
natural disaster	an event related to nature that results in great destruction and/or loss of lives such as hurricanes or earthquakes 自然灾害(U1)
need-based /ni:dbeɪst/ <i>adj.</i>	according to the need 按需的(U4)
newlyweds /'nju:lɪ,wedz/ <i>n.</i>	a man and a woman who have recently married 新婚夫妇;新婚者(U5)
nominate /'nɒmɪneɪt/ <i>v.</i>	formally decide on (a date or place) for an event 确定(U4)
nostalgic /nɒs'tældʒɪk/ <i>adj.</i>	sentimental about the past 怀旧的(U7)
obsession /əb'sefən/ <i>n.</i>	an idea or feeling that completely occupies the mind 摆脱不了的思绪;执著;执意(U4)
one-child policy	the rule in China that says that married couples are suggested to have only one child 独生子女政策(U1)
“oops” /ʊps/ <i>int.</i>	an expression used when (someone) makes a mistake. (表示惊讶、歉意等)哎哟! 哎呀!(U1)
open mindedness	accepting of different ideas, cultures and opinions 思

oriental /ˈɔːrɪˈentəl/ <i>adj.</i>	想开明;胸襟开阔(U8) of or from the orient 东方国家的;来自东方国家的(U6)
originate /əˈrɪdʒəneɪt/ <i>v.</i>	to start from 发端;起源于(U7)
origin /ˈɒrɪdʒɪn/ <i>n.</i>	the place where sth. begins 起源;开端(U3)
ornamental /ˈɔːnəˈmentəl/ <i>adj.</i>	decorative 装饰的(U4)
outlawed /ˈaʊtlɔːd/ <i>adj.</i>	illegal 非法的(U3)
outnumber /aʊtˈnʌmbə/ <i>v.</i>	be greater in number 数量上胜过(U6)
outspoken /ˈaʊtˈspəʊkən/ <i>adj.</i>	saying exactly what one thinks 直言不讳的;坦率的(U1)
overlook /ˈəʊvəˈlʊk/ <i>v.</i>	have or give a view from above 俯瞰;俯视(U3)
overnight sensation	person who becomes famous in a very short time 一夜成名(U5)
oversold /ˈəʊvəˈsəʊld/ <i>adj.</i>	when too many tickets are sold for seats available 超卖(U8)
overthrow /ˈəʊvəˈθrəʊ/ <i>v.</i>	to force out a leader or government 推翻(U5)
oxygen /ˈɒksɪdʒən/ <i>n.</i>	a gas without color, taste or smell in the air 氧;氧气(U2)
packet /ˈpækɪt/ <i>n.</i>	small envelope or package 包裹(U5)
paddle /ˈpædl/ <i>v.</i>	move a boat forward by using flat sticks 船桨(U5)
pagoda /pəˈɡəʊdə/ <i>n.</i>	religious building or a tall tower with several stories each of which has its own overhanging roof 塔;宝塔(U3)
pair off	get into two's 结对(U3)
panda /ˈpændə/ <i>n.</i>	large rare bear-like black and white animal living in the mountains of SW China 大熊猫(U1)
paramount /ˈpærəmaʊnt/ <i>adj.</i>	greatest in importance or significance 至关重要的(U8)
participate in	join (in) 参加(U5)
particularly /pəˈtɪkjʊləli/ <i>adv.</i>	especially 尤其;特别(U1)
patriotism /ˈpætrɪtɪzəm/ <i>n.</i>	loyalty to one's country 爱国主义(U4)
patriot /ˈpætrɪət/ <i>n.</i>	a person who loves his or her country and is eager to defend it 爱国者(U3)

patter /'pætə/ <i>v.</i>	make quick tapping sound 发出嗒嗒声; 噼啪响 (U4)
peak /pi:k/ <i>n.</i>	pointed top, especially of a mountain 尖顶; 山峰 (U2)
peeping Tom	someone who secretly watches a person, usually by looking in a window 偷窥 (U6)
pen /pen/ <i>n.</i>	small piece of land surrounded by a fence, esp. for keeping animals in 圈; 围栏 (U1)
percussion /pə'kʌʃən/ <i>n.</i>	instrument that is played by being hit, such as a drum or gong 打击乐器 (U2)
perspective /pə'spektɪv/ <i>n.</i>	point of view 观点, 视角 (U4)
phenomenon /fɪ'nɒmɪnən/ <i>n.</i>	an observable fact or event that is uncommon in general 现象 (U4)
Pilgrim /'pɪlgrɪm/ <i>n.</i>	early settler that came to America for religious freedom 最初移居美国的英国清教徒 (U5)
plague /pleɪɡ/ <i>n.</i>	major outbreak of a disease that is easily spread 瘟疫 (U5)
plateau /'plætəʊ/ <i>n.</i>	high flat land formation 高原 (U7)
plentiful /'plentɪfʊl/ <i>adj.</i>	in large quantities or numbers 大量的; 丰富的 (U6)
political leaning	the beliefs and ideas related to politics and public affairs that a person favors 政治倾向 (U1)
populous /'pɒpjʊləs/ <i>adj.</i>	having a large population; densely populated 人口多的; 人口稠密的 (U4)
pose /pəʊz/ <i>v. / n.</i>	get into a physical position or posture 摆姿势 (U3)
posture /'pɒstʃə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	the physical position of the body 姿势 (U3)
potentially /pəʊ'tenʃəli/ <i>adv.</i>	having future possibility 潜在的 (U8)
pottery /'pɒtəri/ <i>n.</i>	object made out of baked clay 陶器 (U4)
pour /pɔ:/ <i>v.</i>	cause to flow in a continuous stream 倒; 灌 (U6)
pray /preɪ/ <i>v.</i>	offer thanks or make requests known to God 祈祷; 祷告 (U8)
precious /'preʃəs/ <i>adj.</i>	of great value 贵重的; 宝贵的 (U8)
precision /prɪ'sɪʒən/ <i>n.</i>	the quality of exactness 准确(性) (U2)
preconceived /ˌpri:kən'si:vɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	ideas that one has before having all of the information or facts 先入为主的 (U6)



preserve /prɪ'zɜ:v/ v.	keep safe from injury, harm, or destruction 保存; 保藏 (U2)
prevent /prɪ'vent/ v.	prevent sb. from doing sth.; not allow someone to do something; stop something from happening 预防 (U5)
prime minister	the person who is the head of a state 丞相; 首相 (U3)
pristine /'prɪstɪn/ adj.	in its original condition 原始状态的 (U7)
proficiency test	a test to see if a skill has been mastered 程度考试 (U4)
profitable /'prɒfɪtəbl/ adj.	bringing profit or advantage; beneficial 有利可图的; 有益的 (U2)
project /'prɒdʒekt/ v.	to display in a larger form 投影 (U2)
promote /prəʊ'məʊt/ v.	encourage 促进 (U1)
propel /prəʊ'pel/ v.	move or push something forward with great force 推进 (U7)
prosperous /'prɒspərəs/ adj.	financially successful 兴隆的; 繁荣昌盛的 (U5)
province /'prɒvɪns/ n.	any of the main administrative divisions in certain countries 省; 大行政区 (U1)
psychiatrist /psaɪ'kɪətrɪst/ n.	a doctor trained in treating people with mental, emotional, or behavioral disorders 心理医生 (U4)
pyramid /'pɪrəmid/	a very large building with sides as triangles built in ancient Egypt 金字塔 (U6)
rainbow /'reɪnbəʊ/ n.	a large curve of different colors that can appear in the sky when there is both sun and rain 彩虹 (U6)
range /reɪndʒ/ n.	connected line or row of mountains, hills, etc. (山、丘等连贯而成的) 脉; 排 (U1)
v.	cover a wide area 涉及 (U1)
reassure /ˌrɪ:ə'ʃʊə/ v.	make sb. feel confident, remove fears or doubts 使安心; 安慰 (U1)
rebellion /rɪ'beljən/ n.	attempt to change a government or established practice 造反 (U5)
record /'rekɔ:d/ adj.	the most extreme ever measured 记录 (U7)
reflection /rɪ'flekʃən/ n.	a thing reflected, especially an image in a mirror, still water, etc 映象; 倒影 (U3)

reflex /'ri:fleks/ <i>n.</i>	physical reaction or response 反应;反射(U3)
regime /rei'ʒi:m/ <i>n.</i>	a form or system of government 政体;政权(U4)
regimen /'redʒɪmen/ <i>n.</i>	systematic training 集训(U4)
reign /rein/ <i>n.</i>	rule of a king or queen 君主的统治(U8)
reindeer /'reɪndɪə/ <i>n.</i>	large deer found in the far north 驯鹿(U5)
relatively /'relətɪvli/ <i>adv.</i>	in comparison to others 相对地(U7)
relics /'reliks/ <i>n.</i>	an object or a place esteemed and venerated because of association with a memorable person or thing 遗迹;遗物(U2)
reluctant /rɪ'lʌktənt/ <i>adj.</i>	unwilling; showing no enthusiasm to do sth. 不情愿的(U8)
repertoire /'repətwɑ:(r)/ <i>n.</i>	musical pieces available for performance 常备剧目;保留节目(U4)
reproduce /,ri:prə'dju:s/ <i>v.</i>	(of humans, animals, insects, etc.) produce (offspring) by natural means 繁殖;生殖(U1)
reschedule /ri:'fedju:l/ <i>v.</i>	change a schedule 改变行程(计划)(U8)
reservoir /'rezəvwɑ:(r)/ <i>n.</i>	natural or artificial lake used as a source or store of water 水库;蓄水池(U2)
reside /rɪ'zaɪd/ <i>v.</i>	live 居住(U7)
resort /rɪ'zɔ:t/ <i>n.</i>	popular holiday centre 度假胜地(U5)
restrict /rɪ'strɪkt/ <i>v.</i>	limit 限制(U3)
retreat /rɪ'tri:t/ <i>n.</i>	place suitable for privacy or seclusion 静居处;隐居处(U3)
retrieve /rɪ'tri:v/ <i>v.</i>	bring sth. back 找(挽)回;收复(U3)
reverse /rɪ'vɜ:s/ <i>v.</i>	change to the opposite direction 逆转;倒转(U5)
revival /rɪ'vaɪvəl/ <i>n.</i>	the process of bringing sth. back into existence 复原(兴);再生(U3)
rickshaw /'rɪkʃəʊ/ <i>n.</i>	a small, two-wheeled cart like passenger vehicle with a fold-down top, pulled by one person, formerly used widely in Japan and China 人力车(U6)
right of way	the rule that allows a person or a vehicle to go in front of the other 行驶权(U6)
ripping water	stretch of rough water in a river or the sea 激流;激浪(U3)

ritual /'rɪtʃʊəl/ <i>n.</i>	sth. done regularly in the same way 礼节;礼仪(U4)
rival /'raɪvəl/ <i>n./adj.</i>	near-equal competitor; competing 劲敌;实力相当的对手(U5)
rooftop /'ruːftɒp/ <i>n.</i>	the upper surface of a roof 屋顶(U8)
route /ruːt/ <i>n.</i>	the way taken or planned to get from one place to another 路途;路线(U4)
rule of thumb	the general way something is done 常规(U6)
rumor /'ruːmə/ <i>n.</i>	false or exaggerated piece of news or personal information that passes from person to person 谣言(U5)
sacred /'seɪkrɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	regarded with great respect 受崇敬的;神圣的;宗教的(U5)
sacred hall	a holy or a highly respected place 殿堂;神殿(U4)
sampan /'sæmpən/ <i>n.</i>	舢板(U6)
Santa Claus	an imaginary old man with a white beard who wears a red suit and brings presents at Christmas time 圣诞老人(U5)
saw /sɔː/ <i>n.</i>	a hand or power tool or a machine used to cut hard material 锯;锯床(U6)
scale /skeɪl/ <i>n.</i>	relative size, extent 规模;范围(U3)
scatter /'skætə/ <i>v.</i>	move quickly in different directions 散开(U5)
scene change	a time between acts in a play when the background is changed to represent a new location as far as concerning 场景变换(U2)
scenery /'siːnəri/ <i>adj.</i>	the background in a play 背景(U2)
science fiction	form of literature based on imaginary or futuristic science 科幻小说(U7)
scripture /'skɪptʃə/ <i>n.</i>	holy writings of a religion 经文;经典(U8)
scuba diving	a sport of swimming under water while breathing through a tube that is connected to a container of air on one's back 用水肺潜水的运动(U5)
secure /sɪ'kjʊə/ <i>adj.</i>	safe; protected 安全的;受保护的(U8)
sentiment /'sentɪmənt/ <i>n.</i>	tender feelings 感情;情绪;多愁善感(U3)
serene /sɪ'reɪn/ <i>adj.</i>	calm and peaceful; tranquil 平静的;宁静的(U3)
service /'sɜːvɪs/ <i>n.</i>	a religious ceremony for public worship 宗教礼拜仪式(U5)

setting the tone	establishing a certain feeling 定调(U1)
shade /ʃeɪd/ <i>n.</i>	an area that does not receive sunshine 荫; 阴凉处(U5)
shallow /'ʃæləʊ/ <i>adj.</i>	not deep 浅的(U3)
sharp /ʃɑ:p/ <i>adj.</i>	an exact time; no earlier or later 准时地; 正电的(U7)
sharpen /'ʃɑ:pən/ <i>v.</i>	improve, perfect 改进(U3)
shimmer /'ʃɪmə/ <i>v.</i>	shine with a soft light that seems to waver 发闪烁的微光(U3)
show off	say or do things that get attention or to draw attention to sth. 卖弄; 炫耀(U3)
shrine /ʃraɪn/ <i>n.</i>	place that is regarded as holy 圣地; 圣祠(U8)
shroud /ʃraʊd/ <i>v.</i>	cover or guard 罩; 覆盖(U3)
sidewalk /'saɪdwɔ:k/ <i>n.</i>	path at the side of a street for people to walk on 人行道(U6)
significant /sɪɡ'nɪfɪkənt/ <i>n.</i>	important, considerable 重要的(U3)
sleigh /sleɪ/ <i>n.</i>	large sled pulled by animals over snow 雪橇(U5)
smudge /smʌdʒ/ <i>n.</i>	dirty spot 污点; 污迹(U2)
snorkeling /'snɔ:klɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	a sport of swimming under water using a snorkel 用呼吸管潜水(U5)
snowflake /'snəʊfleɪk/ <i>n.</i>	tiny piece of snow that falls from the sky 雪花(U5)
soil /sɔɪl/ <i>v.</i>	cause to become dirty 使变脏(U6)
solar energy	energy from the sun that is converted into thermal or electrical energy 太阳能(U2)
somersault	roll with the body tucked in a ball 筋斗(U2)
/sʌmə'sɔ:lt/ <i>n. / v.</i>	
sophisticated	well-designed; advanced; complicated 复杂的(U7)
/sə'fɪstɪkətɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	
source /sɔ:s/ <i>n.</i>	the place from which sth. comes 源泉; 出处(U1)
species /'spi:ʃi:z/ <i>n.</i>	a grouping of animals or plants 物种; 种(U1)
speedometer	device used to measure speed 示速器(U7)
/spi'dɒmɪtə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	
speleology /ˌspi:lɪ'blɒdʒɪ/ <i>n.</i>	scientific study and exploration of caves 洞穴学(U7)
splatter /'splætə/ <i>v.</i>	spray with small droplets of liquid; scatter or fall in

sprint /sprint/ <i>n.</i>	drops 嘀嗒落下;溅水(U4)
spur the economy	fast run for a short distance 冲刺(U4)
	help the economy by getting people to spend money 拉动经济(U5)
stack /stæk/ <i>n.</i>	a pile with each item directly on top of another 堆; 垛(U2)
staircase /'steəkeɪs/ <i>n.</i>	a set of stairs inside a building 楼梯(U7)
stalactite /'stæləktait/ <i>n.</i>	a deposit of calcium carbonate hanging from sides of a cave 钟乳石(U7)
stalagmite /'stæləgmait/ <i>n.</i>	a deposit of calcium carbonate like an inverted stalactite formed on the floor of a cave 石笋(U7)
stamina /'stæmɪnə/ <i>n.</i>	the ability to last, having sustained energy and strength 毅力;持久力(U3)
statesman /'steɪtsmən/ <i>n.</i>	a respected government leader 政治家(U5)
statistic /stə'tɪstɪk/ <i>n.</i>	number and fact; data 统计(U1)
stem /stem/ <i>v.</i>	to develop from 发源于;起因于(U5)
stereotypical /ˌsteriəʊ'tɪpɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	ideas that one has about things or people, often not true in reality, usually based on generalities without considering all the information 抱有成见的(U6)
stick figure	representation of a person or animal only with use of lines 线条人物画(U3)
stocking /'stɒkɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	decorative “sock” that is hung up at Christmas 放礼 物的圣诞长袜(U5)
stock up	increase the supply of something 储存(U7)
stork /stɔ:k/ <i>n.</i>	large (usu. white) water bird with a long beak, neck and legs 白鹳(U1)
streamlined /'stri:mlaɪnd/ <i>adj.</i>	smoothly shaped for high speeds 流线型(U7)
string /strɪŋ/ <i>v.</i>	hang up something in a line 用线挂起来(U5)
substantial /səb'stænʃəl/ <i>adj.</i>	considerable; a lot 重要的;大量的(U4)
subtitle /'sʌb,taitl/ <i>n.</i>	words that show the translation of a video or performance 副标题;字幕(U2)
subtropical monsoon climate	climate typical of an area that is near a tropical area 亚热带季风性气候(U2)
superstition	irrational belief that a particular thing or behavior

<i>/ˌsju:pə'stɪfən/ n.</i>	will bring good or bad luck 迷信 (U5)
surface <i>/ˈsɜ:fɪs/ n.</i>	top of a body of liquid or the sea 水面;海面 (U2)
surpass <i>/sɜ:'pɑ:s/ v.</i>	do or be better than somebody or something 优于或超过某人或某事物 (U1)
surroundings	everything around the place or area in which one is located 环境;周围的事物 (U1)
<i>/sə'raʊndɪŋz/ n.</i>	
suspended <i>/səs'pendɪd/ adj.</i>	held in an undetermined or undecided state 被暂时搁置的 (U7)
sweep <i>/swi:p/ v.</i>	extend in an unbroken line 延伸;蜿蜒 (U7)
symbolic <i>/sɪm'bɒlɪk/ adj.</i>	representing something else 象征性的 (U2)
symbolize <i>/ˈsɪmbəlaɪz/ v.</i>	represent or identify by a symbol 作为……象征 (U5)
symbol <i>/ˈsɪmbəl/ n.</i>	image, object, etc. that suggests or refers to something else 象征;标志 (U5)
taboo <i>/tə'bu:z/ adj. /n.</i>	forbidden or culturally undesirable because of being offensive or rude 禁忌;忌讳 (U1)
tail wind	a wind blowing in the same direction as that of the course of an aircraft, a ship, a vehicle, etc. 顺风; a wish for luck with a trip 旅行顺利 (U8)
take pleasure in	have satisfaction or enjoyment in 对……满意 (U4)
tap <i>/tæp/ v.</i>	knock gently on somebody or something 轻拍 (U7)
tassel <i>/ˈtæsəl/ n.</i>	a bunch of threads tied at one end and attached to something as a decoration 流苏 (U3)
tax break	a reduced tax allowed by the government for a specific purpose 减税 (U5)
temperature	degree of heat or cold (in a body, room, area, etc.) 温度;气温 (U2)
<i>/ˈtempərɪtʃə(r)/ n.</i>	
temple <i>/ˈtempl/ n.</i>	a building for religious worship 庙;寺;神殿 (U7)
temporary <i>/ˈtempəreri/ adj.</i>	for a limited time; short-term 暂时的 (U8)
Thanksgiving	American holiday celebrated on the fourth Thursday of November 感恩节 (U5)
<i>/ˈθæŋks,ɡɪvɪŋ/ n.</i>	
“the rest is history”	indicating that the remainder of the story or situation is understood or obvious 其余部分是人人皆知的 (U1)
through someone's eyes	the ability to understand how someone else thinks or

	feels about sth. 了解别人的感受;洞察别人的心态 (U6)
thunderstorm /'θʌndə'stɔ:m/ <i>n.</i>	a storm with thunder and lightning 雷阵雨 (U5)
tightrope /'taɪtrəʊp/ <i>n.</i>	a rope tightly stretched across an open space high above the ground that acrobats walk and balance on (杂技走钢丝用的) 钢丝 (U2)
to be buried in ... <i>idiom.</i>	intensely concentrated on something 埋头于;专心致志于 (U4)
tomb /tu:m/ <i>n.</i>	place dug in the ground to bury a dead body 坟;墓 (U8)
top-ranked /'tɒp'ræŋkt/ <i>adj.</i>	at the top of a list, often in a competition 一流的;顶尖的 (U3)
touchy /'tʌtʃɪ/ <i>adj.</i>	uncomfortable and somewhat offensive 过分敏感的;易怒的;棘手的 (U1)
touring /'tuəɪŋ/ <i>n.</i>	a journey for business, pleasure, or education 游玩;观光旅游 (U6)
trace back	look in the past for the origin of sth. 追根寻源 (U3)
track /træk/ <i>n.</i>	the two metal lines that a train travels on 铁路钢轨 (U7)
tractor /'træktə/ <i>n.</i>	powerful motor vehicle used for pulling farm machinery of other heavy equipment 拖拉机;牵引机 (U1)
traditional /trə'dɪʃənəl/ <i>adj.</i>	following ideas and methods that have existed for a long time 传统的;习惯的 (U6)
trampoline /'træmpəli:n/ <i>n.</i>	a piece of canvas attached by cords to a frame several feet above the floor used by acrobats or gymnasts to bounce high and do tricks 蹦床 (U3)
tranquil /'træŋkwɪl/ <i>adj.</i>	calm, quiet and undisturbed 平静的;安宁的 (U3)
transfer /træns'fɜ:(r)/ <i>n. /v.</i>	move from one place to another; change of planes, trains, etc. 转机;换乘火车 (U8)
trapeze /trə'pi:z/ <i>n.</i>	high swing on which acrobats perform 吊架;高秋千 (U2)
treacherous /'tretʃərəs/ <i>adj.</i>	deceitful; dangerous 危险的;叛逆的 (U2)

treasure /'treʒə/ <i>n.</i>	highly valued object 宝物;珍宝;珍品 (U1)
tropical /'trɒprɪkəl/ <i>adj.</i>	coming from or existing in the hottest parts of the world 热带的;炎热的 (U5)
troupe /tru:p/ <i>n.</i>	performing group 剧团;戏班子 (U2)
tumble /'tʌmbl/ <i>v.</i>	roll and flip 翻跟头 (U2)
tunnel /'tʌnəl/ <i>n.</i>	underground passageway that has been dug through a mountain 隧道 (U7)
uncooperative /ˌʌŋkəʊ'ɒpərətɪv/ <i>adj.</i>	not doing what is expected or necessary; not work with others for a common purpose 不配合的;不合作的 (U1)
undoubtedly /ˌʌn'daʊtɪdli/ <i>adv.</i>	definitely cannot be disputed 毫无疑问的 (U6)
unforgettable /ˌʌnfə'getəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	remarkable in a way that cannot be forgotten; memorable 难忘的 (U8)
unique /ju:'ni:k/ <i>adj.</i>	one of a kind 独特的 (U1)
unreliable /ˌʌnrɪ'laɪəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	easily breaking down; not consistent 不牢靠的;不可靠的 (U7)
unsophisticated /ˌʌnsə'fɪstɪkətɪd/ <i>adj.</i>	simple and natural; not having much knowledge or experience of modern and fashionable things 不世故的;纯真的 (U2)
upgrade /'ʌpgreɪd/ <i>n. /v.</i>	improve quality of sth.; exchange sth. for sth. better 升级 (U8)
vastness /'vʌ:stnɪs/ <i>n.</i>	a huge area that seems to have no boundary 辽阔 (U6)
vegetation /ˌvedʒɪ'teɪʃən/ <i>n.</i>	plants in general 植物;草木 (U2)
vessel /'vesəl/ <i>n.</i>	a container for holding something 容器;器皿 (U4)
veteran /'vetərən/ <i>n.</i>	person who has previously served in the military 退伍军人 (U5)
viewing audience	people who watch television programs or movies 观众 (U3)
visibility /ˌvɪzɪ'bɪləti/ <i>n.</i>	the quality or state of being visible 能见度 (U5)
vista /'vɪstə/ <i>n.</i>	a view from a distance, especially a beautiful view from a high place 远景 (U3)
voucher /'vaʊtʃə(r)/ <i>n.</i>	a card, token or other document that can be exchanged for goods and services in place of money



	票(金)券;凭证(单)(U8)
ware /weə/ <i>n.</i>	manufactured goods 制造品(U4)
waterfall /'wɔ:təfɔ:l/ <i>n.</i>	a place where water from a river or stream falls down over a cliff or rock 瀑布(U7)
wedding party	a bride, groom, and other people directly involved in a wedding ceremony 婚礼聚会;婚礼宾主(U5)
yak /jæk/ <i>n.</i>	a type of animal that looks like a long-haired ox 牦牛(U7)
yield /ji:ld/ <i>v.</i>	give way to; wait for someone else before proceeding 让路(U6)
younger set	a generation of young adults, usually ranging from teenagers to age 30 十几岁到30岁左右的年轻人(U3)
yurt /juət/ <i>n.</i>	round grass hut 圆顶帐篷;蒙古包(U7)
zigzag /'zɪgzæg/ <i>v.</i>	turn right and left alternately at sharp angles 曲折地前进(U7)